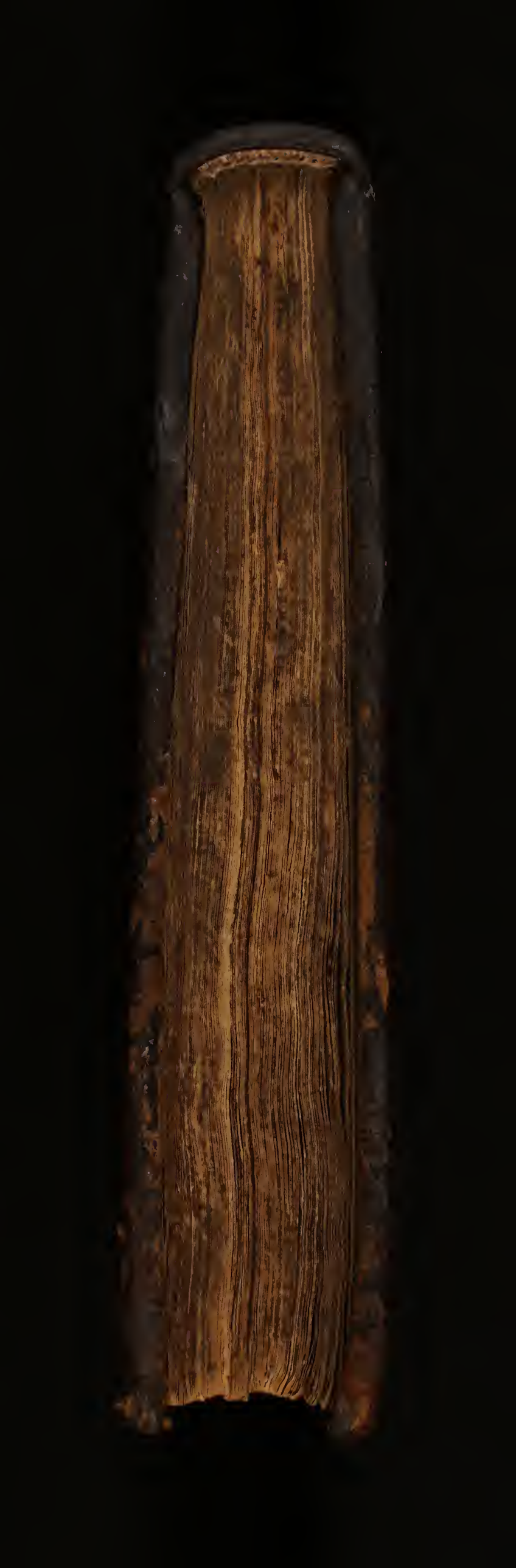
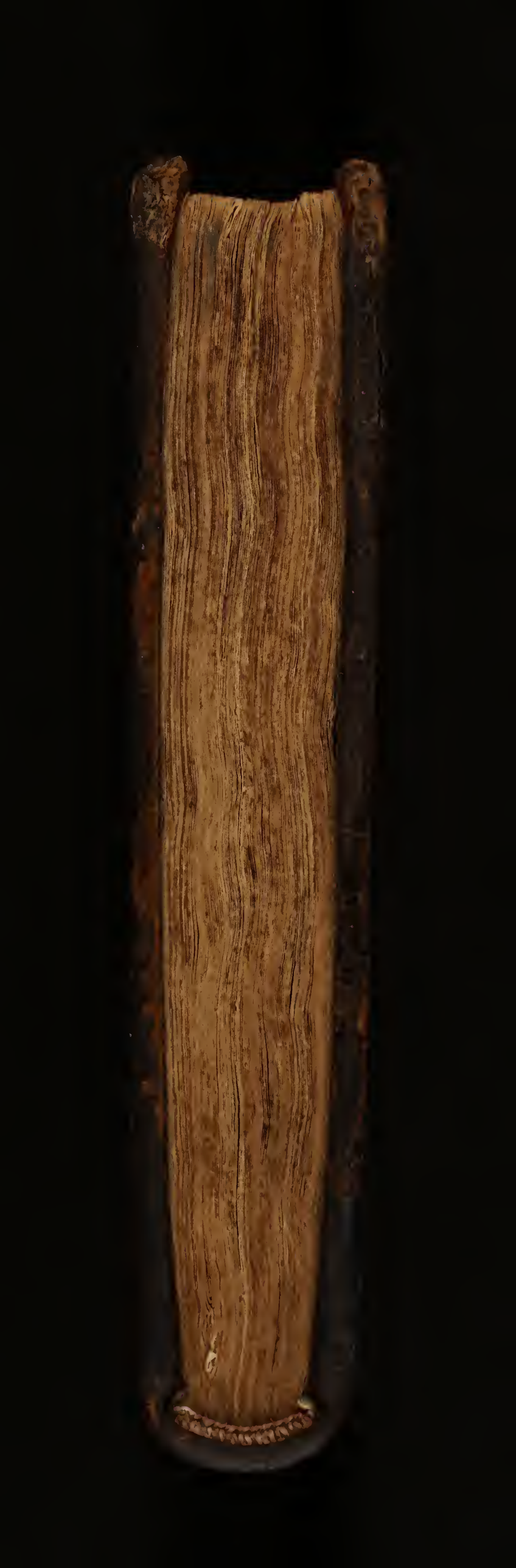




EPS 7425/B

[4639]

£6,500 — 00 (A)

FOLDING PLATES with a figure
& Plates (2 leaves) & Blank
Pages

[1v] + 131 [132] Leaves

FOLDING PLATES WITH SLIGHT REPAIR-
affecting image, repairs to corners &
-fore edge touching image and text lengthy
(open flaws to FS recto, affecting 2 lines
of text, R2 marginal tear, not affecting
text, R3 marginal tear affecting printed text in margin
for recto, D3 closed tear affecting line
of text, H1-6 paper cut affecting 6 lines of
text, & 7 marginal paper flaws with loss,
I1 = Missing text, I1, 14, ¶36
Corner torn away, not affecting
text, very small worm hole to inner
margin, otherwise overall quite
pleasing copy.

The birth of mankynde, otherwyse named the Womans booke.

Newly set forth, corrected, and augmented. Whose contentes ye may reade in the Table of the booke, and most playnely in the prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde Phisition. 1565

LBeit some Aristarchus maye perhappes fynde some lacke of faythfulnesse and diligence in this worke: yet ther is none so froward to denie but that there is some fruite & profyte to bee founde therein, seyng that it commeth now abrode much more enlarged & encreased, and more diligently corrected then it was before eyther in the Latine or in the Englyshe. And where before in the other printes, there lacked matter necessarie to the openyng and declaration of the figures perteynyng to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set foorth, that the simplest mydwyfe which can reade, maye both understande for her better instruction, and also other women that haue neede of her helpe, the more commoditie.

Wherfore my desyre is, that it may be receyued and practised of mydwyues and all other matrones, with no lesse successe, then it is with good wyll and desyre written to profite and to do good to other.

The Table of this present Booke.

Yfft, a Prologue to the women readers.

In this first Chapiter is briefly declared the cõtentes of the firste Booke. Capit. i.

In howe manye coates the body is lapped or involued. Cap. ii. Fol.i.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap.iii. Fol.iiii.

Of the kell called Peritonium. Cap.iiii. Fol.v.

The declaration of the names and nature of the matrix. Cap. v. Fol.vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap.vi. Fol.vii.

Of the mother port. Cap.vii. Fol.x.

Of the vesselles of seede, called the stones, with other thereto apperteynyng. Capit.viii. Folio. xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap.ix. eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers. Cap.x. Fol.xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones, to the angles or corners of the matrix. Cap. xi. Fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in women. Cap.xii. Fol. xxi.

The Table.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes therof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. Fol.xxiiii.

Of the three calles or wrappers, wherin the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. Fol.xxix.

Which of the three Matrix baynes conteine the Termes, and howe the mylke cõmeth to the womans brestes. Cap.xv. Fol.xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures folowyng, wherin be set forth to the eye euery part in woman, mentioned in this boke before.

Of the first figure Fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. Fol. xlv.

Of the thirde figure. Fol.xlvii.

The fourth figure. Fol.xlviii

The fyfth figure. Fol. xlix.

The syxth figure. eodem.

The.vii.viii.and.ix.figures. Folio. l.

¶ The Table of the seconde Booke.

If the tyme of byrth, and whiche is called naturall or vnnaturall. Cap.i. Folio. li.

Of easy and vneasy, difficult, or dolorous deliueraunce, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to knowe and forsee the same. Cap. ii. Fol. liii.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde

The Table.

harde labour. Cap. iii. Fol. lvii.
Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easye, & without great payne. Cap. iiii. Fol. lxvii.
Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, yf it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v. Fol. lix.
Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende, or to remedy the same. Cap. vi. Fol. lxxiii.
Of aborcementes or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii. Fol. lxxxii
Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. Fol. xc.
In the last Chapter of this booke be briefely resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chief purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. x. Fol. xcv.

¶ The thirde Booke.

IN this first Chapiter of this thirde boke is first declared the matters therin conteyned, & then how the infant newely borne must be handled, norysshed, and loked to. Cap. i. Folio. xcviii.

The Table.

Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii. Fol. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the remedies therfore. Cap. iii. Fol. Ciii.
Of the flixe or ouermuch loosenesse of the belly. Folio. Ciiii.
To vnlose the chylde, beyng bounde. Fol. Cv.
Remedie for the cough and distillation or catarrhes of the head. Fol. Cvi.
Remedie for short wynde. Fol. Cvii.
Against wheales or bladders on the tong. eodē.
Of exulceration or clefture, chappyng or chynyng of the mouth. Fol. Cviii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares. Folio. eodem.
Of apostumation in the head. Fol. Cix.
Of the swelling or bolning of the eyes. eodem.
Of the scumme or whyte of the eye. eodem.
Agaynst immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.
Agaynste frettyng or gnawyng in the belly. Folio. Cx.
Agaynst swellyng of the body. eodem.
Agaynst often sneesyng. eodem.
Of whelkes in the body, and the cure. Fol. Cxi.
Agaynst swellyng of the coddes. eodem.
Agaynst swellyng of the Nauell. eodem.
Agaynst vnsleepinesse. Fol. Cxii.
Agaynst yeryng or the hichate. eodem.
Agaynst often perbrakyng by weakenesse and feblenesse of the stomacke. Fol. Cxiii.
Against fearefull & terrible dreames. Fol. Cxiiii

Agaynst

The Table.

Agaynst issuyng forth of the fundament gutte.
Folio. eodem.
Agaynst Tenasmus. eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly. eodem.
Of chafyng or gallyng of any place of the body.
Folio. Cxvi.
Of the fallyng sickenesse. eodem.
Consumption or pynyng away of the bodye.
Folio. Cxvii.
Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauinesse of the chyldes body. eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the palsy. Fol. Cxviii
Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng of the brine. eodem.
Of gogle eyes, or lokyng a squynt. Fol. Cxix.

¶ The fourth Booke.

If suche thynges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth boke. Cap. i. Fol. Cxx
Of conception, & how many wayes it may be hyndred or letted. Capi. ii. Fol. eodem.
Howe manye wayes conception maye be letted, and howe the causes maye be knoen. Cap. iii. Fol. Cxxi.

Howe

The Table.

Howe to know whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be percepued whether she be conceaued or no. Capi. iiii. Fol. Cxxiii.

Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche may farther the woman to conceiue. Cap. v. Fol. Cxxiiii.

Of diuers bellyfying receptes. Fol. Cxxvi.

Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the head. Fol. Cxxvii.

To take awaye heere from places where it is vnseemely. Fol. Cxxviii.

To do awaye frekens or other spottes in the face. Fol. Cxxix.

To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescensis on the face, or els where. eodem.

To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes, face, or other part of the body. Fol. eodem.

To souple and mollifie the ruggednes of the skynne. Fol. Cxxx.

Agaynst sodayne rysynges of pimples through vnkynde heate in the face or els where. eodē.

To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.

Of stynkyng breath. Fol. eodem.

Of the ranke sauour of the armholes. eodem.

Here endeth the Table.

HEre in the beginning of this present Prologue, I wil folow the example of them, whiche when they bid any gestes to dyner or supper, are wont first to declare, what shall be theyr chere, what fare, and howe many dishes they shall haue, praying them to take it in good worth, and to looke for neither better ne worse, then hath ben mencioned of. And euen so here wyll I do. Before that ye enter into the reading of this litle treatise, I shal succintly & in fewe wordes recite the sūme and chiefe contentes of the same, with the vtilitie and profit which may ensue, to the diligent and attentife ouerreader therof, to thende that ye of these thinges beyng first wel aduertised, may haue the more or lesse courage to employ your labour in ouerlokyng & perusing of the same. For cōmonly it doth occasionate any man to be the more prompt, ready, and willing to take payne, when he is assured or certified of the profit, purpose, and fruite therof comming, and likewise it is a great pricke or allurement, entising and meuing a man, to reade any boke, when he is somwhat first admonished of the matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent of thauctour.

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

The Prologue.

The more part of this booke translated into Englishe thre or foure yeres past.

Why an howd name what Euphrosine Rhodion The name of this boke. why rdno to it in latin e printed it at frankfort an. 1543. Thomas Raynold.

shall vnderstande that about a three or foure yeres paste, a certayne studious and diligent clarke, at the request and desire of dyuers honest and sad matrones, beyng of his acquaintaunce, did translate out of Latin into English a great part of this booke, entiteling it according to the Latin inscription (*de partu hominis*, that is to say: of the byrth of mankinde) whiche we nowe do name (The womans booke) (for so much as the most part, or well neare all therein entreated of, doth concerne and touche onlye women:) In whiche his translation he varied or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie in translating, then choise or discretion at that time in admitting and alowyng many thinges in the same booke, greatly needing admonition a wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which otherwise might somtimes vse that for a helpe, the which should turne to a hinderance. Wherfore I reuoluing and earnestly reuising from top to toe the said booke, and herewithal considering the manyfolde vtilitie and profit, which thereby mought ensue to all women (as touchyng that purpose) yf it were more narowlye looked ouer, and with a straighter iudgement more exactly euery thyng therein pondred and tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde not be euyll employed, ne vnthankefully accepted and receyued of all honest, discrete and lage women, yf I after good and diligent perusing therof, did correct and amende suche faultes in

it,

it, as seemed worthy of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good or intollerable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and which were vtterly to be eschued. The whiche thing I haue not onlye so done, but ouer this, haue therevnto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented and more familier medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set forth, and euidently declared, all the inward partes of women (suche as were necessary to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onlye in wordes, but also in lyuely and expresse figures, by the which euery part before in the booke described, may in maner be as exactly and clearely perceyued, as though ye were present at the cutting open or Anothomie of a dead woman. And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this first booke, and knowledge thereof to be lytle or of smale value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceyuerance wherof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euery thing commeth to passe within your bodyes in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceyue the reason of many diseases whiche happen peculiarly to women, and the causes therof, by whiche perceyueraunce, agayne ye shall haue the readyer vnderstanding how to withstand & remedy the sayd infirmities or diseases. For note ye well, that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be, that

Many thinges annexed and newly added to this booke.

The Contentes of the first booke.

nota.

Howe profitable the first booke is

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie.

The Prologue.

Wal become an absolute and perfect Phisition, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge, of all the inwardes & outwardes of mans & womans body: euen so shall ye neuer grounlye vnderstand the matters contayned in the seconde booke, or any other communication, or writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissaunce in the first boke. Againe when that a woman commeth to a Phisition for counsell, concerning somthing that may be amisse in the part, the aunswere of the phisition and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie is many tymes obscure, darke & straunge, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, & fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in any part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his healty to vnderstande in what part the disease is, & howe that part lieth in the body. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to inuent infinitely the better howe the medicine shuld be applied, & after the most profitable sort ministred & set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittines & artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of phisicke, procedeth & springeth of the profounde knowledge of anothomie. Therfore mine aduise & vtter coũsel is, that al women in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstanding of this first boke: wel:

The counsayle of the auctour to the readers.

well assuryng them that they shall not repent them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the end that euery thing might be the playner and more easy to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter end of the forsayde first boke, set the figures which represent such matters as were entreated of in the boke before, and also haue thereto annexed a sufficient declaration & exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde boke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the delyueraunce or birth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, & other cases happenyng to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedies and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out any medicine beyng first in the olde boke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuall medicines, such as eyther I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alyue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this seconde boke ye may fynde dyuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that nedeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue more largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

The contentes of the seconde booke.

In the thirde boke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and to-

Many truely experimented medicines added to this booke.

Thinges entreated of in the thirdboke

kens of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and bryng vp the chylde beyng borne. Item medicines encreasyng, deminyshyng, attenuatyng, engrossyng, and amendyng the mylke in the Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and sundry diseases, which oft tymes chaunce vnto infantes after theyr byrth.

What is contryned in the fourth boke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll somewhat commune of conception, with the causes hynderyng or fartheryng the same, shewyng certayne counsayle and remedies whereby by the grace of God the vnfruitefull may be made more fruitefull, and impedimentes of conception, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouercome, the woman beyng made the more apt to conceaue. And farther, in this last booke shall be vttered and sette forth certayne embellesh-yng receptes, concernyng only honest & healthsome decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes most lowable and commendable in a woman, as to scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere from fallyng away, to take awaye heere from certayne places, where beyng, it causeth some deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or other where, to remoue and do awaye spottes, frekens, and other suche lyke displeasaunt markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the skynne beyng rugged and rough, with other mo suche lyke matters, to long here to be rehearsed, the whiche truely are not of any prudent

dent person to be reiected, improued, or displayed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only which may make to the honest, comely, and commendable conseruyng and maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and defying all fardyng, painting, and counterfait cast colours, which of some dampnable and misproude people be dayly vsed, suche as by all meanes possible seke and searche more the abhominable and deuillish paynting & garish setting forth of their mortall carkases (the better therby to commend it vnto the eyes of foolysshe & fonde men) then by honest, sober, debonayre, & gentyl maners, so to demeane theyr lyfe, that they may therby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall fauour first of God, & then of all honest, discrete, and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I haue in as compendious maner as the matter would suffer, set before your eyes the chiefe and principall contentes comprehended in this litle volume. And now remaineth there nothing els but only to require the beneuolent fauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paines spent in the compilyng of these forsayde matters, praying, that as it hath ben to me paynefull in the composyng therof, so it may be both pleasaunt and fruitfull to al women (for whose sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng therof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vnsure that many there are, before whose syght this booke shall synde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Against painting of womens faces.

The beneuolencie of the reader required.

The Prologue.

Harde to please many iudgements.

So harde a thyng it is to wryte or endite any matter whatsoeuer it be, that should be able to sustayne and abide the variable iudgement, and to obtayne or wynne the constant loue and alowaunce of euery man, especiallye yf it conteine in it any noueltie or vnwont strangenes.

The maner of Poetes in tymes past.

Therfore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprysed any new or strange workes, were wont in the frunte of the same, with great protestation, to inuocate and call vpon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requiryng them fauourably to aspire, ayde, and prosper their attempted purpose, to the ende that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the more acceptable and gracious to all suche as shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example ryght necessary and nedefull it were that I here shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuocation, myght be allured and wonne the beneuolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in whose handes this present boke should happen to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye to be assistent the three louyng graces, or great Apollo, god, maister, and chiefe inuentour of the nature of all hearbes and other medicines, or Esculapius chiefe patrone and president in the worthy science of Phisicke, or wittie Mercurie with his doulce and fugred eloquencie, with sweete Suada, goddesse of al perswasion,

The difficultie to conceyle the good wyl of peruert people.

with

with all other the goddes and goddesses what euer they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do faigne to be a maiestie, myght and power, to encline the hartes of men for to delyte and take pleasure in any such thyng whiche first shalbe by theyr godhead alowed & fauoured. Though (I say) all these shoulde firmely conspire in one together, and bende them vtterly to the most of theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and with theyr holy poetical spirite to breathe ouer this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and wayward wyttes, that woulde (without all good reason) blame and improue the same vnneth yet seene, and much lesse read. For who be they that geue so precipitat and heady iudgementes in all maner of matters, as such (for the more part) the whiche therein shall haue least cognoissaunce or knowledge, and take least payne in readyng or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynste the whiche they be moste stout, doubtie, and holde pronouncers. And this do I not say onlye of them, that peraduenture shall here and there in the processe of this booke fynde any perticuler matters to reproue, and carpe, sometymes worthyly, and sometymes otherwyse: but also, yea, and that muche more of them, which generally without all exception, shall condempne and vtterly reproue all the whole matter, some alleagyng that it is shame, and other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng such

The lyght iudgementes of many men

Of them that vtterly do condemne this booke.

such matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and vulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of theyr wont secretes, by the detection and discouerynge whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the company of women, and farther, in theyr communications to iest and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be knowen of them, with diuers other suche lyke cauillations and reasons: so that theyr opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppresse and vtterly to condempne vnto darkenesse for euer this booke, then to sende it foorth into lyght. Loe, such is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, wherof may ensue both good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr eyes wakyng and firmely affixed and directed vppon the euyll, pyckyng and chosyng out the worst of euery matter, omittyng and leauyng to speake of the best, as the thyng whiche were nothyng to theyr purpose. If euery thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condempne and banysshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthy, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may be peruerted and turned to an euyll vse, by them that be euyll and naught them selues.

Aunswere to certayne cauillations.

Nothyng so good but it may be abused.

and

and do abuse it, ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse therof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. Fyre and water be two right necessary elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done and perpetrated. By fyre hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys. By water, swalowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vsers therof, doth minister and mayntayne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnsaciat gourmauntes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, sickenesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfarying man, from the assaulte of the thiefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throte by the thiefe cutte. The moste holye and sacred Byble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and briefelye, the hye waye to GOD. The blessed Sacrament of the Aulter was instituted and ordeyned by our Sauiour Jesus Chryste, for a principall, earnest, lyuelye, and moste presente consolation and comfort

Fyre and water abused.

Meate and drinke abused

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the forsayde holy Sacrament, haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion and condempnation of a great number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receyuers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydyng al these forsayde inconueniences, and for the reasons abouesayde, condempne and bannysh fyre and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, suppresse and forbyd all maner of weapons, abolysshe and set aside the holy Scripture, deny or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thinke it. Therfore I say, the iudgment of that eye can neuer be egall and indifferent, whiche hath more respecte and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (only through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites dayly and commonlye lyke to ensue to the well vsers of the same. That that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disalowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth testifie: To them that be good them selfe, euery thyng turneth to good, what euer it be, is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seeke the glory of God, and the onely profyte of theyr euen Christen. And contrary, suche as be of an yll disposition, in euery thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of mayntenaunce to theyr lewdnesse, turning matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolysshe and pyursshe pratyng contention.

Whose iudgmentes can neuer be indifferent.

To the good euerye thyng turneth to good.

The condition of such as be yll.

Wherfore

Wherfore considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or vertuous, but that it may by wyckednes be abused, it shalbe no great wonder though this little booke also, made, writtен, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vsed contrary to godlynes, honestie, or thentent of the wryter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onlye in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some wyckedly disposed person shoulde abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some diuelishe and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, right soone will perceiue. The seconde poynt is, least that this booke happening into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnsemely tymes, to the derision or ashaming of suche women as shuld be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alledged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely deuyded abrode, that none of them shall fall in any suche persons handlyng. Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynges, neyther honest, godlye, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemptuously

Wherein this booke may be abused.

The seconde poynt.

No light persons shall haue any of these bokes.

Of foolishe and lewde talkers.

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do great iniury, dishonour, and contumely to nature: For he that declareth any thyng in man or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehearsing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumeliously he shameth and confoundeth his euen Christen, wherewith he bryngeth hym out of pacience, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce, in rehearsyng of suche thynges, and after suche sort, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and vexe his mynde, wherefore for suche dedes, he shall not be accounted of the number of honest and sage persons, but of the light and lewde. Yet another sort is there, whiche woulde that neyther honest ne vnhonest men shoulde see this booke, for because (as they say) be a man neuer so honest, yet by reading here of thinges to them before vnknowen, they shall conceyue a certayne lothsomnes and abhorring towardes a woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that they shoulde nede to care who knewe of it, neyther is there any part in woman more to be abhorred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of suche thinges whiche commonly be called the womans priuities, shoulde diminiche the hartie loue and estimation of a woman in the minde of man, then by this reason, Phisitians and Chyrurgians wyues should greatly be abhorred & misbeloued of their husbandes. And I

Some wold that neyther honest ne vnhonest should haue this booke.

my

my selfe lykewyse, whiche wryteth this booke, shoulde meruaylously aboue many other abhorre or lothe women. But to be shorte, there is no such thing, neyther any cause therto why. Wherfore all suche tender reasons set apart, let no woman be greeued who shall see or beholde this booke, for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure he shall learne neyther lewdenes, vnhappines, ne knauery. Howbeit, generally to all men, in whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come, I counsayle and exhort, that they take not vpon them to talke of any thynges therein contayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be assuredly well accepted.

No matter who reade this booke.

Therhortation to all readers.

For women lightly wyll not gladly heare of suche matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Physition of whom they require counsayle, or of theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no displeasure to any honest and louyng woman, that her husbande should reade suche thynges, for many men there be of so gentle and louyng nature towarde theyr wiues, that they wyll be more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke out any thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues good, beyng in that case, then the women themselues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to interpretate and conster euery thyng herein contayned, accordyng to the best, and to vse euery thyng herein entreated of, to the purpose wherefore it was wrytten, for truely as

for

The consideratiõ why this booke was set forth

for my part considering the manyfolde, dayly, and imminent daungers & perylles the whiche all maner of women of what estate or degree so euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and abyde, yea, many times with peryll of their life (of the which there be to many examples nedelesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde be a very charitable and laudable dede, and right thankefully to be accepted of all honourable and other honest matrones, yf by my paynes this little treatise were made to speake Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to speake Dutche, Frenche, Spanische, and dyuers other languages. In the whiche countreys there be fewe women that can reade, but they wyll haue one of these bookes alwayes in readines, where also this and other such bookes be as commonly solde at euery Stacionars shop, as any other booke. The same commoditie then and profite whiche they in their regions do obtayne by enioying of this little booke in theyr maternall language, may also ensue vnto all women in this noble Realme of Englande, it beyng lykewyse sette forth in our Englyshe speache, so that to them whiche diligently will aduert, and geue heede to the instructions of this little booke, it may supplie the roume and place of a good midwyfe, and aduyse them manye tymes of sundry cases, chaunces, and remedyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wyse women and good midwyues shalbe ful ignorannt.

This booke set forth in many other languages.

The Prologue.

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed by dyuers persons worthy to be beleued) there be sith the fyrst setting forth of this booke, right many honorable Ladyes, and other worshipful Gentylwomen, whiche haue not disdayned, the oftener by the occasion of this booke, to frequent and haunt women in theyr labours, carrying with them this booke in theyr handes, and causyng such part of it as doth chiefly concerne the same purpose, to be read before the Mydwyfe, and the rest of the women then beyng present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith the labourying woman hath ben greatly comforted, and alleuiated of her thronges and trauayle: Whose laudable example and doynges, woulde God that many proude Mydwyues woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche, as there be many right expert, diligent, wyse, circumspect, and tender about suche busines as appertayneth to theyr office: So be there agayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnreasonable, chorlishe, and farre to seeke in such thinges, the whiche shoulde chiefely helpe and succour the women in theyr moste paynefull labour and thronges, through whole rudenesse and rashnesse onlye, I doubt not but that a great number of women in theyr labour spede worse then neded otherwyse. But here nowe let not the good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is spoken of the badde. For beryly there is no science, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beres,

Howe Ladies & gentilwomen haue vsed this booke.

Of Midwiues.

Ineuery science ther be of all sortes.

and Asses, whiche as aboue all other haue most nede of informacion and teaching, so most commonly agayne, more then any other, wyll they kicke and wynce agaynst suche as wolde them reformme or reduce to any better way then they haue ben accustomed to in times past. And this do I say, for because that at the first commyng abrode of this present booke, many of this sort of Mydwyues, moued eyther of enuie, or els of mallice, or both, diligented and endeuoured them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to fynde the meanes to suppresse and abrogate the same, makyng all women of theyr acquaintaunce (whom they thought to haue any knowledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng worth, and that it shoulde be a slaunder to women, for so muche as therein was descried and set forth the secretes and priuities of women, and that euery boy and knaue hadde of these bookes, readyng them as openly as the tales of Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they were false and vntrue, and malicious allegations onlye of euyll harted persons, to whom it was great griefe, that any by readyng thereof, shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had knowledge of before: So is it very sooth and true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and verye desirous to haue of them, and gaue faythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr familier knowledge, to heare the booke read by some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it them

Some Widwiues wold haue had this booke forbidden.

The false surmises of the maleuolent.

The good Widwiues were glad of this booke.

themselues. whose honest and vertuous indu-
stry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and de-
serue the laude and prayse of all them that be
laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthy and
vyle ingratitude and despituous enuye of the
malenolent, to be detested and vtterly abhorred
of all people: Whose malignaunt wittes, yf
they might preuayle of theyr purpose, woulde
slay the good courages of all honest enterpri-
sers, in those matters and all other. And
thus I conclude and make an ende
of this rude Prologue, requi-
ring the gentle readers
thereof, that if they
shall fynde any
thing ther-
in inter-
pretable to diuers senses, to ac-
cept only that whiche may
make to the best, accor-
dyng to my mea-
nyng.

Enuy and vnthankfulnes to be abhorred.

The first booke.

¶ In this first Chapter is briefly declared the Contentes of the first booke.

ALthough that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shal seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently said in the Prologue) that the ignorannt in the first, shall be full blynde in the seconde, to the whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie of the first booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, such as are in them, by nature dedicate and assigned to the propagation, conception, and bearing of mankynde. In whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye Woulde say, the campe or fielde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although that

The Contentes of this booke.

that man be as principall mouer and cause of the generation: yet(no displeasure to men) the woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, What to the encreasement of the chylde in her wombe, and What to the norysshement thereof after the byrth, then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man Woulde demaunde to whom the chylde oWeth most his generation: Ye may Worthyly make aunsWere, that to the mother, Whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conferrence of moste matter in begettyng.

The woman conferreth more the generatiõ then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certaine thinges, Which in times passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely Writtenof, and of the Whiche both men, yea and Women them selues, haue conceiued very erronious and misopinions, as ye shall farther percepue in the processe.

Many things falsly Written in times past

Nowe therefore that We come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in Woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

better vnderstandyng thereof, fyrst to shewe the discription of certayne thynges, without whose knowledge, this treatyse woulde be manye tymes the more obscure and darke.

¶ In howe many coates the body is lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The principall coates of the body.

THe body of man or womã is inuolued or compassed vniuersally with three principall coates. Of the whiche, the first and vttermost is called the skyn, in Latin *Cutis*, with whom generally euery part of the body is clad & inclosed, the which yet in some part is more soft, delicate, & thin, then in some other, & in some one person more stowre & stiffe, then in some other again, for causes nedlesse here to be rehearsed.

The superficiall skynne.

And ye shall note, that vpon the outward face and superficie of this skinne, there is yet another thinner skinne, in

Latine

Latine commonly named *Cuticula*, and of some *Efflorescentia cutis*. This thinne skin is it, the which ye see ryse like a bladder When any part of the body is blistered With fyre or hot Water, so that betwene this thinne skin and the very skinne, is conteined the Water which resorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre or heat, the which thin skin also we vse to pricke to let the water issue forth, also the same that skaleth or pylleth of the handes or other parts of the body being scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the skin that the Adders do cast in the sommer tyme, is the foresaid thin superficiall skin, & not the very substanciall skin of the body in dede. For the very skinne neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great violẽce, as by slaying, lyke as beastes be slayne at the butchers, & as they slay conies. And againe, the thin or superficial skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so oftẽ, yet in the place of it is reingendred new, as good alwayes as the former. But yf the second & very skinne be perished, by

Cuticula.

The adder or snake casteth of his Cuticula & not his very skyn

The very skyn scaleth not of.

The verye skin perished, neuer restored

cuttyng or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The seconde coate.

The seconde inuestiture or clothyng of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in Latin *Membrana carnosa*, so called, for because that it conteineth and is compassed of fleshynes, then any other kell or skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the lynyng to the foresayde *Cutis*, that is the very skyn immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it being both basted together, by a great numbre of small fibres or cordes enterlasyng these two skinnes so that with great payne vnneth may they be seperated the one frō the other. And farther, betwene these two skins runne a great number of vaynes, arteries and skinnes, in euery part of the body, so that the great vaynes which appeare so manifestly to your syght in

membrana carnosa. The fleshy skynne.

the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betwene the proper skinne and the fleshy skynne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the body, is the fatte, in Latine *Adeps*, the which doeth so generally in euery part of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lyking, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places nedelesse here to be resited, and doth entercurre and run betwene the two foresayde skynnes, receiuyng & embrasyng in it selfe the small bastyng fibres, the vaynes, artires, and sinues, which (as I saide before) be deriued frō the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betwene the two skinnes, the lesse be the vaynes intercurryng betwene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance of

The thyrde coate, is the fatte.

Store of fat letteth the shewe of the vaynes.

of fat drownyng & coueryng the greatnes of them) the which also in the selfe same place of a leaner or sparer person, shalbe sene very great, and as it were swollen vaynes, in comparison of the fatter. Itẽ, vnderstande ye that in some part of the body, naturally fatnes doth abound much more then in other some, as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two fingers thicke & more, and in women that be meanely fat, in the thyes & buttockes this fatte is of three, yea foure fyngers thicknes, which (as I sayde aboue) alwayes hath his place betwene the foresayde two skynnes.

Fat in some part, more then some.

Nowe immediatly vnder the fleshye skin, be conteyned the Muskles of the body, so that the inner face or superficie of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth the Muskles, is always bedewed with a certayne slympe moysture, by whiche meanes, the foresaid Muskles mouyng and styrryng vnder the said fleshy skin, be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment or let in theyr motion, & very easy it is

What is conteyned nexte vnder the fleshy skynne

to seperate this skin from the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be.

Cap. iii.

What is meant by the name of Muskles.

THe Muskles of mans body be called the mouyng cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the body is moued to or fro vpwarde or downewarde, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwyse do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or mouyng it, With the other hande do feele the wreste of that hande, ye shall sensiblie perceyue as it were certayne cordes mouyng vnder the skynne, the whiche be called Muskles, in Latin *Musculi*. To discusse curiously the nature or occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresouer there is greate store of Muskles, and chiefelye in the myddle parte of them, there is also greate plentie of flesshe, enterlardyng

The muskles entermingled with flesshe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe with the Muskles, & as it were conbyndyng, colligatyng, or knyttyng together the Muskles, not so yet, but that neuertheless they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body lefte apart and vnmentioned of, here wyll I onlye declare a litle of the Muskles of the belly, forsomuch as their operation is sometymes conferent and appertaynyng to the matters that we entend of.

The muskles of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye, next vnder the fleshy kell or skyn, be. iiii. Muskles, eche situate and sette vnder other, of the whiche, the vppermost immediatly touchyng the fleshye skyn be called the Byaswyse descendyng Muskles, in Latin *Musculi obliqui descendentes*. Of these Muskles there be two, in ech syde of the belly one, so that these two Biaswyse descendyng Muskles meete together in the myddle region of the bellye, and be extended or spread ouer all the amplitude of the belly, shapyng thereto as it were another coate.

musculi obliqui descendentes

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswyse ascending Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi obliqui ascendentes*, Whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the first, in eche syde or coaste of the belly is there one.

musculi obliqui ascendentes fol. 2.

The thirde sort of the belly Muskles as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the rycht Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi recti*, Which be double as the other two before.

The right Muskles.

musculi recti fol. 2.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi transuersi*, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In eche side likewyse of whom, there is one of these Muskles, which in the middle line of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the abouenamed three Muskles, so that the byaswyse descendyng, and the byaswyse ascending with the ouerthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the belly, but so do not the right Mus-

The ouerthwart Muskles.

transuersi fol. 2.

kles,

The vse of the foure belly Muskles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muskles be to the entrayles and bowels within the belly, as foure seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe of whom, together with the ayde of the midriffe, all expulsion both vpward and downeward in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the woman in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of makyng of water, is wrought, and yet beſydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, and strength the inwardes of the belly.

¶ Of the Kell, called *Peritoneum*. Capit. iiii.

The Peritoneum and his office.

VNder the laste Muskle of the belly, called the ouerthwarte Muskle, immediatlye succedeth a certaine thin rime, kell, or skin, named in Latin, *Peritoneum*, whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude and

and largeour of the belly, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreading it selfe abroade, vnderlineth the ouerthwart Muskels, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlineth all the Whole cauitie, holones, or amplitude of the belye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe, all the Whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of the egge. And as for *Peritoneum*, doth not onlye inuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and Webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the Which his liuery, they be the more arctly & straightly affixed or fastened vnto himselfe, and farther, in themselues the stronger, Within the cauitie of the belly, and vnder this *Peritoneum*, be contayned these bowels folowyng.

The vse and profit of the Peritoneum

First

Bowels cõtayned vnder the Peritoneum.

stomachus omentum. Iecur. Splen. vesica. matrix. intestina Renes. vena caba. Arteria magna.

First the stomake, Whiche is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the Winde pipe, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin, *Omentum*, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes, the kydnees, the master vayne, and the master artire. But here We shall begin first to entreate of the matrix, as the part Which maketh chiefly to our purpose.

¶ The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix. Capit. v.

Dyuers names of the Matrix.

o y matrix mother womb or ni ger liber sunt Synonima.

HEre ye shall vnderstande, that these thre Wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the Wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say: The place wherein the seede of man is conceiued, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme of

of deliuerannce, in Latin, named *Uterus & Matrix*. The necke of this Wombe, otherwise called the Womans priuitie, We Wyll call the Wombe passage, or the priuie passage, in Latin *Ceruex uteri, & pudendum muliebre*, the extreme end, or the first entraunce of this priuie or Wombe passage, ye shall name the passage port, for because that it is the port gate, or entraunce of that passage, or Way into the Wombe or matrix, in Latin, *Vulua. i. vulua.*

The Wombe passage then or the necke of the Wombe, taketh his beginning at the passage port, and from thence styeth and mounteth ryght vpWarde vnder the sharebone like a great conduct, varying in length & bredth accordyng to the age of the Woman.

To make especiall mention of the length of this Wombe passage, Were but follie, for the diuersitie thereof. Notwithstandyng in Women it is esteemed of the length of. x. xi. xii. or. xiii. fingers bredth, some more, some lesse. And this We may say that nature hath so prouided

The necke of the Matrix.

ded that it is of sufficient length, to re-
ceyue the priuie part of man, in the ge-
neration, directing the same towardes
the wombe port, thorowe the whiche
the sede is naturally sent from the man
into the wombe or Mother, therto hel-
ping an attractife power, whiche is in-
set and geuen to the wombe, to attract
and drawe towardes it selfe the seede
parted from the man (so that there be
no other let.)

¶ Of the wombe and his partes.
Capit. vi.

The wombe or Matrix in women not with chylde contrahid.

AT the head or vpper end of
this wombe passage, is si-
tuate the wombe it selfe,
whiche in Women beyng
not With childe is very lit-
tle, contract and drawen together, so
that the amplitude or largenes therof,
passeth not the amplitude & largenes
of the priuie passage, the Whiche thing
to some may seeme vncredible, yet by
Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

And

And for al this contraction or drawing so nere together of the Matrix, the outsyde of it is very smothe, moyst, glistering, and reddishe, as it were a lyttle redde tempered With a great deale of Whyte, the insyde also of the Matrix is smothe: yea, and though that the Matrix (as We haue said) be full of riuels or Wrinkles, by the reason that it is so contract, from a great amplitude or largenes (as may be seene in the Woumbe or Matrix of Woinen With chylde) to this little compasse, yet may a body scarce perceyue in this inner side any Wrinkle, (albeit that there be infinite) they be so finely and nere drawen together.

The cause of the contraction of the Matrix.

This contraction of the Matrix, no doubt Was made by nature, for these causes, partly that at suche tyme that the Woman is not With childe, it should occupie the lesse rowme in the belly, but chiefly that in tyme of conception of the seede, the little bolke or quantitie of the sayde seede, at his first conceyuing into the Womans Mother, may

be touched rounde about euery where of the Mother, and as ye woulde say, amplexed or embraced, and contayned (as the nut shell contayneth immediatlye the nut) of the inner walles or face of the matrix, and as the seede is viuified, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and ware bygger, so that at the laste, when the infant commeth to his full groweth, or when the woman is great with chylde, then this coate or kell of the Matrix is as thinne as a bladder, where that in tyme of his contraction, or when the woman is not with childe, the coate or wall of the Matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the Matrix varieth the thicknes and thinnes of his coate.

The founde of the Matrix.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the founde or bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowlwyse, but rather lyke the forme of a mans hart, as it is paynted, sauyng that the partition or clifte in the matrix betwene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundlye dented inwardes as the clift

clyfte in the hart: For in the inWarde vault, cauitie, or holonesse of the Matrix, there is a certayne seame, Whiche begynnyng in the myddle of the forepart of the Matrix at the Wombe port, doth passe forth by that foresyde, & so by the bottome to the hynder syde of the Matrix, & from thence along downe to the Wombe port on the backsyde, as ye may more euidentlye see in the figure hereof. This seame then is as it were a litle seperation, marke, or limitie, deuidyng the Wombe in two equall partes or sydes, the ryght and the lefte. Notwithstandyng, in the Matrix there is but one vault, cauitie, holonesse, or amplitude, the foresayde seame beyng but as it were a note, signe, or scace sensible marke running along the sides and botome of the Wombe. But this seame or line Where it passeth the bottome of the mother or Wombe, is more crasse, thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, helding, hangyng or lokyng downeward into the vaulte or amplitude of the

A certayne seame deuydyng the Matrix as it wer in two parts.

In the Matrix but one holonesse.

wombe, the whiche line in the sides is nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the myddle part of the bottome of the Matrix, is not so hye as the two corners or angles on both sydes be. Other distinctions or seperations in the Matrix is there none, albeit that in tymes passed, diuers Clerkes haue written, and many other haue beleued, that there shoulde be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in the Matrix, in thre of the which, on the ryght syde, shoulde onlye men chyldren be conceyued, and in the other three on the left syde women chyldren, and yf it chaunced that the seede were conceiued in the seuenth sell, which was the middelmoste, then that shoulde become a monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman. The which al is but lyes, dreames, and fonde fantasies. For the womans Matrix, as I haue sayde, is euen as a strong bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersal holonesse, and the chylde when it lyeth in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more then

Certayne erronious opinions of. vii. selles in the wombe.

then on the other, the head beyng to-wardes one of the corners or angles, & not vpright toward the middle bridge.

The Matrix hath but one holoncsse.

¶ Of the Mother port. Cap. vi.

Of the Mother port, and the situation therof.

THe entrance of the Matrix or wombe, is named the Wõbe port, or mother port, the which in substaunce, & fassion, much doeth resemble the fourme of an haukes bell, or other litle mores belles, sauyng that it is much bygger, hauyng a clift ouerthwart the body therof, as ye may more playnly perceyue by the figure hereof. And this port of the Matrix is of substaunce more thicke & crasse then the rest of the same, & as it were a kernell rounde & clift in the middest. This Wombe port also is fastned & affixed to the vpper ende of the Wombe passage, as all the rest of the Wombe is.

Howe be it, the myddle parte of the Wombe port or the snowt therof, Where it bosseth downewarde, doth touche no side nor part of the Wombe passage, but onely heldeth pendande wyse, or loketh downewarde, and where as at suche tyme that the man companieth with the woman, the priuie passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priuie part, yet notwithstandyng, the mouth of the clift of the Wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated, excepte that it be at such tyme that the matrix beyng apte and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this Wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the Wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe well diposed naturally attracteth the seede.

Notwithstandyng, when the seede is conceiued in at this Wombe port it doth not alwayes remayne there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it self. Albeit yf the seede be retay-

retayned styll in the Matrix, then doth the Wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmely, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat Without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the time of delyueraunce, at What tyme agayne it delateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is Wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the Matrix after the seed conceaued.

¶ Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, With other thereto appertaynyng. Cap. viii.

Of the syde of the Matrix lieth a stone, Which both be called the womans stones, wherein is engendred the seede and sparme that commeth from the Woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather Weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howebeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the Whiche it Was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassyoned after the shape of a great and brode almonde. The substaunce and body of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kirnelles setre together, betwene the which is much holonesse, and therin conteyned a certayne thinne watery substaunce. This substaunce of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmely annexed to the forsayde substaunce, which also doth receyue into hym selfe the seede bryngers. Ye may name the same coate in Latin *Supergeminalis.*

¶. Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede bryngers.

The seede bringers, called in Latin *Vasa semen adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one bayne and one artire, and take theyr begyn-

nyng

uyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the great maister vayne, in Latin *Caua vena*, and the great Artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister vayne hath his originall of the liuer, from Whence it descendeth downeWarde along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, Where the Artire (as the Worthyer) begynneth to mount vppon the maister vayne, and in this place they both deuide them selues in two partes forkeWyse, the ryght part of the forke proceadyng into the ryght thygh & legge, the lefte, into the left legge, the vayne euermore associate With the artire, the Which hath his begynning of the hart, from Whence he is descended thoroWe the mydryffe to this place, distributyng to all places Whereby he passeth artires.

The originall of the great vayne.

The office of the great vayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (Which is the bloud shoppe, Where the bloud is engendred

The office of the vaynes.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye bloud, therwith to norysshe them. For to the great vayne Where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal vaines on euery syde, euen as to the great ryuers many small streames on euery syde do resort.

The office of the Artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abrode in the body the vitall and lyuelye spirite, engendred in the bosome of the harte, and to refreshe and temper the immoderate heate Whiche otherwyse mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleepe We or Wake We, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulce, and loke after what maner the hart (which is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The hart e Artirs haue two contrary motions.

The hart then, and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary mocions: one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatyng and openyng of it selfe, Whiche sorte of inouynges We call the beatyng

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to tempter the heate of the body Withall, and also spirituall and thin pure bloud. But When they close them selfe, then do they expel mistie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapoures, suche as of necessitie alWayes be engendred in al partes of the body, by the Whiche bloud doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neyther is there any notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braūch, derived from that place a longe the loynes downwardes to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lykewyse and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the right loynes, Wher it meeting With the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here straight

The meting of the vayne and artire.

straight enlarging them selfe, little and little stepelwyse, not fully rounde, but flattishe before and behynde, With the broder ende plantyng & infixing themselfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, where this vayne braunche and artyre braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, enbrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyse, wrything and deuydyng them selues in thousande of lyttle braunches, as it were hayres of the head, the one embrasing, compassyng, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of theyr commixtion. Call this part then in Enlysshe, the bradid body, in Latin *Varicoso formemplexum*, Whose nether and broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfolde wyse dispersed, spred, and commixt.

The bradid body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called before *Supergeminalis*, from the sayd bradyd body, be there deriued many small braunches, muche lyke vnto the little small vaynes Whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke What description and processe, We haue made of the ryght side seede bryngers, to the ryght stone, euen the same vnderstand of the left side sede bryngers to the left stone, sauyng that the vayne braunche Whiche commeth to the left stone, most commonly taketh his originall of the nether syde of the left kydney vayne, and not immediatly of the great vayne as the other.

Vaynes deriued to the bottome of the Matrix.

And ye shall vnderstande againe, that from the foresaid vayne & artyre of eche side, at the place Where theyr fyrst conjunction or meeting is, proceadeth a certayne braunche of the vayne, assosiate with the artyre, Which both passe forth together to the found or bottome of the Mother or Matrix, of that syde where they stande, there delatyng and spreadyng

dyng

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde smaller braunches, to the nourishment of the body of the matrix.

¶ Of the office and vse of these seede bringers. Capit.x.

The seede procreate of the vayne bloud and the artiriall bloud.

THrough these seede bringers, bloud out of the vaynes, and liuely spirit out of the artires be deriued, yea, or rather (to speake more properly) attract or drawen into the stones, there by vertue and naturall instinction of the place altered and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused together the bloud and the spirite, by mutuall amplexations or embracementes of these two vesselles, the vayne and the artyre beyng conioyned and vnite in one very body, fyrst beginning in the braid body, & then after in the Whole bodye of the stone: So that thorowe the manyfolde and infinite circulations of the attracted matter by the conduictes or vaynes infinitely intricate and

and wrythed with a thousande reuolutions or turagaynes (and all in the little compasse of the body of the stones) the bloud and spirite commixed together, getteth another nature and propertie both in colour and in effect.

Note the ingin and policie of nature

And here ye shall vnderstande, that moste commonly alwayes when that nature is disposed to make a transmutation of any matter, that can she not do, vnlesse she haue a mine, shoppe, or workehouse, wherein by continuall circulatiõ of the matter transmutable, she may bring her purpose to passe. Euen as mettalles and other minerals of the earth, haue their secrete and vnuisible waynes, in whiche by dayly and long coagitation, mouing, circulation, and hurling together, thei be brought from one fourme to another, & made metals of that the which before was none.

Foure mines in mans body.

Of these sort of mines, there be foure principall in the body of man. The first is the mine of bloud, which is the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

before of colour Whyte, is tranſmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nouriſhe all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the ſtomacke and guttes, thorowe very ſmall and infinite lyttle vaynes into the lyuer.

The hart is the ſeconde mine.

The ſeconde mine is the hart, which of the bloud attract and drawen from the great maſter vayne, procedyng out of the foreſayde lyuer, into his parlers, doth engender vehement and liuely ſpirite, cõmixed With depured and greatly elaborated bloud, Within the ſelles of the hart, from thence ſent forth thorow the artires, into all partes of the bodye, beyng in colour yealowiſhe, thinne and hotte bloud.

The brayne the thirde mine.

The thyrde mine is the brayne, of whom all the ſineWes take theyr originall. In Whom the Wittie ſpirite, the ſpirites of mouyng, and the ſpirites of al ſenſibilitie be engendred, and thorow the ſineWes ſent to all partes of the bodye. For all ſuche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reaſon of ſineWes de-

riued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō by commixtion of al the other thre foresaid metalles of the body, that is to say, bayne bloud, arteriall bloud, and liuely spirites engendred in the head, is engendred & produced seede, Which he bestowed in his due place, becommeth like a perfection to the creature from whence it came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

The fourth mine is ths stones.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the receyuyng of the seede into the stones, is not that there shoulde be any one onlye caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler in the bodye of the stone, Wherein it myght be receyued and retayned, lyke as the holownesse of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre otherwyse: for the stones (chiefly in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but dilicate and softe, as a softe kirnell, full of small & almost vnsensible White vaines, reuoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manyfolde wise intricat

Howe the seede is receyued into the stones.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested and altred, by vertue of the whyte flesh, which intercurreth and interminglеth it self euery where betwene the foresaid vayne, lyke as the earth doth intercurre and intermingle it selfe betwene and among the small fibres, beardes, or heares of rootes. The whyte coate also or walles of the said vaynes, helping not a little to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

Howe the colour of the seede is transmuted.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receyueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very small and narowe, and long withal, then the liquour that passeth through it, receyueth and sauoureth so muche the more the nature and condition of that vessell or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduit or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cauitie of the same, but so much

Liquid thinges sauoureth of the nature of the vessels thorowe which it runneth.

that

that an heere myght passe thorowe it: then say I, that a gallõ or quart of water passing and thrilling through that narowe conduite, should sauour muche more of the nature and qualitie of lead, then though the holowneſſe of the aforesayde conduite, beyng styll of the abouenamed length, were so large that a bowle myght enter and passe thorow the same. For this reason, that when the Water hath to passe thorowe so narowe passage, it maketh the longer turney, and yeldeth the smaller threade or streen, and therfore is touched more immediatly and intierly of the insydes or inner walles of the conduite. And further, Well ye wote that a little quantitie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a great. As a sponefull of Wine standyng all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shal sauour much more of the potte, then a pynte of the same. Lykewise, yf a man woulde coole hoat drynke by pouryng of it out of one pot or cup into another, sooner and more perfectlye shall the cir-

A litle quantitie sooner ouercome then a greater.

cumstant colde ayre alter and coole it, beyng poured out very softly, makyng therof a fine and small streen, then yf he dyd the same hastyly. And truely this engine and pollicie doth nature vse in euery part where she causeth any notable transmutation, making the matter transmutable to passe thorowe longe strayghtes & narowe turagayne lanes, the matter bowyng, enclynyng, and apting it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-on and nature of the vesselles, thorowe which it cooleth or runneth, so that the sparme or sede of man or woman, being attracted by the foresaid seede bringers into the stones, passeth by many narow strayghtes, Which beyng before vayne bloud and artire bloud, by vertue of the places through whiche it had to passe, becommeth from red colour to whyte, & of much more perfection then it was before. For this transmutation of bloud into sparme, is not only in colours, but also in properties and absolute perfecti-on. What greater wonder or miracle is there,

The pollicie of nature.

The transmutation of bloudde into sparme.

there, Wherin We may knowledge and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consider howe that of the meate and drynke Whiche We dayly do eate, by digestiõ first of the stomacke, the fine iuyce thereof is seperated from the drosse and grosser part, & then after at the seconde hande, the forsayde iuyce passyng thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thorowe infinite smal vaynes, there transmuted into bloud, from the lyuer sent into the great maister vayne, from the Whiche the hart drawyng part, transmuteth certayne therof into Artire bloud. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire bloud, Whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparme: Which sparme bestowed and conceaued Where it shoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

Howe meate and drynke is transmuted into bloud.

This forsayde seede, as We saide before, is nothing so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in Woman as in man, & yet can you not cal this any imperfectiõ or lack in Womã, for the Womã in her

The seede in woman, not so firme as in man.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neither is Woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtyer and strong, the Woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the Horse, the Lion, the Oliphant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the Whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, comparyng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitories, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other, in boyce Womãlyke, in gesture and condition nice, in softnes of skin and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothing manly ne bold, the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye well be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whẽ that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie which commonly by nature

Who be vnperfecter the one then the other.

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparyng it to other of the same kynde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, With theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare What becommeth of the seede being thus engendred, and Whyther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap.xi.

AT the lower ende & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone, there is the begynnyng of another vessel, which may be called the seede carryer, in Latin *Vas semen deferens,* whose body is Whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part where it taketh his begynnyng, it passeth

Of the seede carryers.

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expresly perceiue in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne restying or remountyng vpwarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the middle region of the stone on that side, at the way as it creepeth, firmely fastened and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasted them selues to the walles, by which they creepe.

The belly and inner syde of the foresaide seede carier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattyshe, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yele when they slyde fast or hastyly, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, haife circles, or

wreathes

Wzeathes nere ioyned together: howe-
beit, these Wzeathes be not so frequent
and thicke in the Woman as in the man
Therefoze this parte of the seede cary-
ers may be called the Wozme, in Latin,
Corpus lumbricosum, foz because that it hath
many conuolucions, as Wozmes lying
together haue.

Of the part called the wozme.

And yf ye be disposed to seperate this
forenamed Wozme from the face of the
stone With a sharpe knyfe, ye shall per-
ceaue no maner of holonesse oz cauitie
of vayne oz other cõduite, but as it Were
a ruggednesse, by reason of seperation
from the partie, to Whom it was befoze
so suredly annexed. And yet no doubt,
there is verely in it cauitie and holoW-
nesse, by and thozowe the Whiche seede
is caried into the angles of the Matrix.
Nowe then When this forsayde Woz-
nye body hath attayned to the myddle
region (as it were) of the stone, it begyn-
neth to depart frõ the body of the stone,
and is no moze (as it Was befo[re])
thicke

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde, lyke a rounde sinewe, With an vnsensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwartyng the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proceade from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & crokyng it selfe in two or three crokes by the way. These seede carryers receiueth the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresaid seede bryngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they Whiche do open dead Women, shall alwayes perceyue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles or corners speciallye bedewed or imbued With a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, Whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng greate

and

and feruent desire to any man, this sede doth issue from this foresayde place, downe along to the Womans priuie passage, moistring all that part, as it were with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo, do suppose that this seede in Woman, serueth for no other purpose, but onlye to recite, moue, and stirre the Woman to pleasure. But some peraduenture would thinke that this were but a simple & an ydle or slender purpose, whiche if thei did more nerely consider the matter, should percepue it to be a iust, great, and necessary cause. For if that the god of nature had not instincted, and inset in the body of man and Woman, such a vehement and ardent appetite and lust, the one lawfully to company with the other, neyther man ne Woman woulde neuer haue ben so attentife to the Workes of generation and encreasement of posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shorte tyme of all mankinde. For ye shal heare some Women in tyme of theyr trauaile, meued through great payne and intol-

The prickes of nature.

lerable

lerable anguiſhe, forſweare and bowe them ſelfe, neuer to company with a man agayne, yet after that the panges paſſed, within ſhort whyle, for entyre loue to theyr huſbandes, and ſinguler naturall delyte betwene man and woman, they forget both the ſorow paſſed, and that that is to come. Suche be the priuie Workes of God, and ſuche be the prickes of nature, Which neuer createth no ſpeciall pleaſure vnaccompanyed With ſome ſorowe, neyther is there for the moſte part any ſorowe, but that it hath annexed ſome ioy or comfort. leſſe or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the burthen and weyght of diſpleaſure.

No ioy with out ſome ſorowe.

Here is declared the ſituation of the blader in women. Capit. xii

NOw for the vicinite and neighbourhood that is betwene the priuie paſſage and the bladder, here I will declare a little the nature of the bladder.

The

The bladder in Woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Mother, Whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite Within the priuie passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to seperate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in Women is much shorter then in men, the Whiche necke is enuironed and compassed With a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were With a brode and flat hoope ring, firming and claspíng the vrine passage in such Wise, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it therto: Which thing cõmeth to passe, other When the bladder is ouercharged With vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but little in qualitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie With it, Which for the sharpenes and eagernes of the qualitie prickyng and ticklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for little quantitie. &c.

The Muskle of the bladder.

Howe the bladder Muskle is forced to opé it selfe.

The

The description of the bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the which a lyttle aboue the necke therof, entreth the seconde vrine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master vayne, and lykewyse of the Artyre, is situate a kydney, in latin called *Ren*. And to euery of them from the sayde great vayne and great Artyre, is there deriued a vraunche of the vayne, and another of the Artyre, by the which vraunches the kydneys do attract and drawe bloud vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr natiue office) seperate and deuide from the watery part, sendyng forth the water, otherwise called vrine downe to the bladder, through the vrine vaynes or conduites.

Of the stone engendred in the backe

In these kydneis is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or

peeces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes or kidnees into the bladder, by the forenamed vrine conduites, and so from the bladder out at the yarde, where, yf the peeces be rockie or bigge, it causeth to the partie in the voydyng of them, vntollerable paynes and torment. And note that for the moste part, the ryght kydney euermore standeth hyer then the lefte.

The vryne once entred into the bladder, can not reuert.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande that when the vrine, pisse, or water is once entred throughe the foresayd vrine conduites, into the bladder, it cannot returne vpwarde againe the way that it came (were the bladder neuer so full) for because that where as the said vrine conduites do enter into the bladder, in the inner face of the bladder, there be set before the mouth or gull of the conduites, certaine litle skinnie flappes, which suffer any thyng to enter in, but when it is once entred, these skinnie flappes close the passage, and defende, that nothyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bel-
lowes, which haue euer a great hole on
the one ſyde thereof, to let into the bel-
lowes great ſtore of wynde or ayre at
once, but when the bellowes is full of
wynde, yf ye ſtop the noſe thereof with
ſomwhat, there wyll none thereof re-
turne agayne out by that waye, the
flappes of leather croſſyng and defen-
dyng the paſſage: yea, the more vehe-
mentlye and the harder that ye preſſe
both ſydes of the bellowes together,
the faſter and more ſtiffy doth the flaps
ſtop the way, and cleaue to the bordes
of the bellowes, the violence and force
of the wynde cloſyng and ſtoppyng his
owne way, ſo that the bellowes would
ſooner breake, then that the ayre ſhould
come out there. And euen ſo it is in the
bladder, ſauyng that the ſayde ſkinnie
flappes of the bladder, be more craftyly,
properly, and artificially wrought, then
any man can deuyſe.

When there is then any notable
quantitie or qualitie of the vryne, ga-
thered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thorowe the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in many people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dissury, With other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured Without insition and cuttyng out. But Women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstandyng, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encombred.

¶ *Of the vaynes whiche resort to the Matrix and* the partes thereof. Item of the termes and their course with the causes therof. Capi. xiii.

Nasmuche as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in Women, cannot well be perceiued, except first it be knowē what vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix, therfore first I wyll entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable vaynes resorting to the Matrix.

Vaynes then notable, which may be perceyued by Anothomie to reach from seuerall partes of the great *Vena caua*, or master vayne, to the Matrix and the partes therof, be three, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euident doctrine sake, I will geue three distinct and diuers names. The fyrst shalbe named the bottome vaines of the Matrix. The second, the necke vaynes of the Matrix. The thyrde, the share vaynes.

The bottome vaines of the Matrix.

The bottome vaynes be they, which proceade and take theyr beginning at the seede bringer vaynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the Matrix, there dilatyng themselfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small slippes, norysshyng the body of the Matrix, as hath ben sayde alredye in the ende of the .ix. Chapter.

The neckes baynes.

As touching the necke baynes of the Matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the forsaid.ix.Chapter, I shewed you how that the great maister bayne, and the great artire associate together, when they attayne about *Os sacrum*, they begin to deuide them selues in two partes forkwyse, of the whiche the ryght (& so lykewyse the left) part of the forke is redeuided in other two partes forkewyse also, wherof the vppermost and greatest bayne passeth downe along tyll it come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it proceadeth into the vtter parte of the thygh, & so along downe to the legges and feete. The innermost and lefte or smaller part or bayne of this second diuision, where it parteth from the vppermost, passeth downe along vntyll it come to the great hole whiche is alwayes in the share bone, thorow which

it entereth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the saide hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal braunches in the necke of the Matrix, and the nether parte of the body of the Matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more clearly se in the figure hereof

Of the necke vaynes of the Matrix.

The share vaynes take theyr begynnyng at the insyde of the abouenamed vpperinost and greatest vayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer the hockle bone, frō whence this slip is deriued on eche syde, that is, both the ryght and the lefte, vnto the myddle of the share bone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priuie parte and the coddes, & also the *Perineum*, whiche is the place that is betwene the fundament and the yarde. In women this vaine where it attayneth the myddle parte of the sharebone, it deryueth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes sydes or extreame ende of the priuie passage, and also in

The share vaynes.

the

the sayde *Perineum*. And this shall suffise for the declaration of the vaynes Whiche resort to the Matrix and her partes, saue that ye muste vnderstande, that loke What order or procession of vaynes commeth to the Matrix from the right syde, the same selfe order is lykewyse in the lefte syde. And agayne, that none of these vaynes runne to the Matrix or otherWhere, vnassociate of an Artire.

What is meant by this worde Termes.

NoWe to come to the declaration of the nature of termes, ye shal vnderstand that they be called in Latin *Menstrua*, so, because that once in a moneth they happen alWayes to Womankind after .xiiii. or .xv. yeres of age passed (beyng in theyr perfect health) In Englyshe they be named Termes, because they retourne eftsoones at certayne seasons, tymes and termes, and some name them theyr flowers. What name soeuer ye geue vnto it, ye shall Witte, that the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng els but the issuyng of certayne bloud,

compzehended in the vaines of the Ma-
trix, there by little and little collected
and gathered betwene terme & terme,
and so agayne at wont and accustomed
tymes, by nature expelled and sente
forth.

The which bloud, the Matrix vaines
do attract from the great *vena caua*, into
this part, and that not sodaynely or at
once, but very soberly, and with much
leasure, yea, so muche as there is space
betwene the one hauyng of the flowres
and the other (which is comonly three
wekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the
womans wont) so long be these sayde
vaynes in fyllyng, and yf they were so-
ner full, soner also woulde they sende it
forth againe. For when they be once re-
plenyshed, they can not conueniently or
naturally containe or drawe any more,
tyll they be lyghtned and discharged of
that that is drawen alredy.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne
circuites and termes, the smal endes of
these Matrix vaynes open them selues

in

in the inner face or superficie of the Matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this bloud, which as I haue sayd, is called the Womans termes.

The cause of the ordinance of termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in Women, is this: Forsomuche as almyghtie God had so institute that Women shoulde be conceaued, efformed, or fassyoned, augmented, nourysshed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, Whereof nature created the Wombe or Matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office Wherin she mought at her leasure Worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nourysshment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, Wherefore prudent Lady nature full Wisely hath prouided

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redy a continuall course and resort of bloud in the vaines of the Matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne or Well, euermore redy to arouse Water, and norische the feature, so sone as it shalbe cõceiued, yea although the Woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no faulte in nature, Who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeined for this necessary purpose, yet When the purpose fayleth (as it doth When there is no feature in the Wombe to be fedde therewith) it shoulde be to the place but a burthen and vnprofitable lode there to remayne or lynger, When then I say, at her set and prescript time she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The which thing When she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde vaynes of this con-

continuall spryng, resorteth of newe a-
gayne other freshe bloud in the place of
that that is departed, Whiche by litle
and litle coling into them, in the wont
circuite of time refilleth them, and then
yet issueth agayne, and so this continu-
al course doth kepe alwayes in women,
from theyr youth, tyll they come to a-
bout fyftie yeres of age, or litle more or
lesse, at what time naturaly this spring
dryeth away, which when it is gone, it
is impossible for the Woman to beare a-
ny mo children. For were the womā ne-
uer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had
her termes (as some suche there be) she
shal neuer also haue no childrē, albeit it
may be that she may conceaue, but the
seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-
teth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of
nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that Where
as some wryte & saye that the womens
termes folowe the course of the moone,
so that in the full or in the Wane of the
moone they shuld always come, this is
not true, for they haue them at one time

They that haue no ter-
mes can not beare child

and

Tearmes come not to all women lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all Women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of theyr dura unce not all one in euery Woman, for in some they lynger vpon them .v. vi. vii. yea .viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great effeoblishment and strong paines in the backe. In some other cõmonly they passe not the space of three dayes at the vttermost, wherefore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne chieflye be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vppon them. And contrary, such as be drie and collerike, other by nature, or labour and trauayle, & such that be of complection cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they indure vpon them. After What maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nourysshed with this bloudde (matter at other times of the termes) I

Wyll

Wyll declare, When that I haue some-what first shewed the nature of certayne caules, Wherein the feature conceyued is wrapped and inuolued.

¶ Of the three caules or wrappers wherein the Infant is lapped. Capi.xiiii.

THe seede conceyued into the Wombe or matrix of the Mother, anon it is amplected, clipped, & embraced of the inner face of the Matrix, the mouth or port thereof in the meane whyle closed and shut exquisitely. The seede then When it hath ben a certayne little space in the Wombe, by the naturall heate, or rather by the inset and ingenite vertue of that place, is enuironed & enclosed rounde With three dyuers coates, caules, or Wrappers, Whiche in Latine they call (*Inuolucra.*)

The feature conceyued is wrapped in three caules.

The first and moste immediate or nearest

The fyrst caule.

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne, Whiche contayneth rounde about the Whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onlye at the nauell, by certayne vaynes and Artyres, Whereof We Wyll sp ake anone, this caule in Greke is called *Amnios*, in Latine *Agnina*, for cause it is as dilicate as lambes be. The MidWifes commonly call it the coyfe or byggyn of the chylde, and some call it the chyldes shert, the Which also manye tymes proceadeth alone With the childe, eyther vpon the childes head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not such a coyfe, because it doth appeare but seldome alone, vnaccompanyed With the other caules. BetWene this Wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweat Which euaporeth continually from the

skyn

skinne of the infant, Whylest it is in the Wombe.

The seconde wrapper.

The second Wrapper or caule in Greke is called *Allantoides*, in Latin *Farciminosa*, in Englishe, these two termes do signifie (haggiswise) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outwarde skinne or bagge of an haggisse pudding. The inner face and superficie of this caule is sinoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the first wrapper, but onlye at the nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about in his compasse and cauitie or holowbnes, the whole childe and the saide first caule.

Where the vryne of the childe becõmeth.

Betwene this and the fyrst caule, is gathered together all the store of vryne that the chylde maketh, duryng the time it is in the mothers Wombe, Wherein the industry of nature is to be lauded, Which so prouideth, that this pisse or vryne of the infant should be expelled betwene these two caules, and not remayne about the body therof, lest with the acrimonye, and eager sharpenesse

hereof

hereof, it should endamage and greeue the tender body of the baby.

The thyrde wrapper named Chorió

The thyrde wrapper of the feature is named *Chorion* of the Greekes, in Latin, *secunde* or *secundina*, in Englishe ye may call it the secondine: Albeit that in the seconde booke folowyng, I do commonlye vse to name the hole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (*secunde* or *secundina*) to this wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (*secunde* or *secundina*) is proper & moste due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuyng forth, and procedyng of these three wrappers or caules, together with such grosse extrementes as haue ben engendred and remaynyng in the wombe, duryng the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the childe is fyrst proceaded & come to lyght, for first issueth the infante, and then secondly, the forsaid afterbyrth, & therfore it maybe iustlye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This wrapper or caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infante, as the other two wrappers do, but onlye the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waste, to the share of the infante, so that it is compassed with this wrapper as with a broade hoope ryngе, the latitude or breadth whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi. or. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it were a broade gyrth or swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatly the body of the infant, for betwene this and the bodye therof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules or wrappers, whiche generally incloseth rounde the whole corps of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and couereth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this wrapper is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye exact-

The office of the hoops caule

exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnnumerable small vaynes and artires, which at this tyme do shewe theim selues more clearely in the face of the matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touching the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediat meanes of the sayde vaynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Iuy tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles or trees, whereby it crepeth by many hearie fibres or small thredes.

This coniũction betwene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broade, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it self rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresaid vaynes and artires do not only knyt and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substaunce of the hoope caule at euery

part

part thereof. And within the sayd sub-
staunce of the hoope caule, these many-
fold small braunches meete, & enter min-
gle the one with the other, the vaynes
with the vaynes, and the Artires with
the Artires, so that in theyr recountre
and meetyng, they produce alwayes
bigger and bigger vaynes and artires,
(but fewer) tyll at the last all these be-
come two great vaynes, and two great
artires, the whiche foure vessels from
hence proceade together, passe and perse
through the other two caules spoken of
before, and so entreth into the Nauill of
the childe, so that the thre caules by the
meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and
fastened to the childes Nauil, and when
they be entred into the Nauill, the two
vaynes degenerate in one, the whiche
frō this place mounteth vpward along
the inner superficie of the belly, vntill it
haue attained into the liuer, wher it en-
tering, deuideth it self again into many
slippes, so that no doubt the bloud is ca-
ried through this Nauill vayne, frō the

vaynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the childe, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes nozishable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from the Nauell downeward, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other alonge the left, till it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Thozowe these Artires, liuely spirite and freshe ayze is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, wherewith the naturall heate of the chylde is viui-fied and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the fore-sayde nauill vayne, when the chylde is borne, begin to wyther and drye, euery day moze and moze, & become much like a Harpestring, without any holownes oz cauitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his origi-nall at the bottome, founde, oz vpper part of the chyldes bladder, and exten-deth it selfe to the nauill of the Infant, through which it passeth vntill it come betwene

betwene the first and the seconde caule without the chyldes body, where, by a priuie issue deuised by nature for the same purpose, is expelled the brine of the Infant, proceadyng by this brine vayne from the bladder, as partly was spoken of before, that part of this brine vaine which is within the body, when the chylde is borne dryeth and wythereth away, as I sayde of the other.

Which way the chylde doth expell the brine.

The innen superficie or face of this *Chorion* is very strongly affixed and fastened to the vtter superficie of the seconde caule named *Allantoides*.

As for the bastyng that is betwene the Matrix and *Chorion*, many tymes it is weakened and effeoblyshed by reason of euyll, fleigmaticke, or colericke humours there about, betwene the bastinges conceaued, whiche ouermuche haboūding, do cloy the said basting vaines or strynges, whereby many tymes the one seuereth from the other before conuenient season, & so causeth abortement The mouthes or specks of the vaines in

the Matrix, wherby it cleaueth to *Chorion* be called in Latin *Acetabula* & *Cotiledones*, for what cause, or vpõ what reasõ, is both nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be rehearsed. Agayne, the substance of this *Chorion* is not thinne lyke a skin, bladder, or call: but of all other partes of the body, it may be most Worthyly resembled to the spleane or melt in a man or beast, the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is as much or more as the thicknes of the thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of which colour also the bloud therin conteyned, is as the remayne and refuse of the purer, attract and drawen naturallye of the Infant, by the above named nauyll vaine. So that, to be short, *Chorion* is the immediat receptacle and receiuer of al the vaynes and artires, to be deduced from the Matrix to the chylde, and the chylde receiueth only at his hande the two Vaynes and Artires, whiche by the waye as they passe & pearse thorow the other two calles, towardes the chyldes Nauyll, they sende into eche of the

The substaunce of Chorion.

the caules innumerable small eye vay-
nes and artires, Whereby the caules be
susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then Which were wont at other times to stooze thẽselues in the Matrix vaynes, and at certayne circuites to issue fooxth. Nowe when there is a feature oz chylde in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceade no moze fozth (as superfluous) but remaine and be reserued to the necessary nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the womens bzestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose Wherfoze she made and created this course of bloud, as hath ben Written sufficiently in the Chap. befoze.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceiued & abused, Whiche call the Termes the womans purgation, oz the clensyng of theyz bloudde, as Who should say, that it were the refuse, dzosse and byler part of the other bloudde remaynyng in the body, naturally euery

moneth sequestrate and seperated from the purer, for the vilitie and eupll qualitie therin comprehended. For vndoubtedly this bloud is euen as pure & holsome as all the reste of the bloud in any part of the body els.

The termes be of so holsome bloud, as any other parte in the body.

Is it to be thought, that nature would feede the tender & dilicate Infant in the mothers Wombe, With the refuse of the bloud, or not rather With the purest of it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she Woulde that the pure bloud commyng frō the Matrix vaynes should be made yet purer, she suffereth not the same to enter immediatly into the Infant, but first vseth another meane, and sendeth it into *Chorion* or the hoope cal (as I haue sayd before) Where truely it hath a certayne circulation and another digestion, Wherby it is defecate, and clensed very exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature attenuated and fined, and so at the laste sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all the grosser part in the spungy bodye of the hoope caule.

The chylde beyng in the wombe, norysshed of the purest bloud.

Yet much more are to be detested and abhorred the shamefull lyes and slaunder that *Plinie*, *Albertus magnus de secretis mulierum*, and diuers other mo haue written, of the venemous and daungerous infective nature of the womans flowres or termes, the whiche all be but dreames and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr fond wordes here, were but losse of inke & paper, wherefore let them passe with theyr auctours.

Slaunders of the Termes.

¶ Which of the three Matrix baynes conteyne the Termes, and howe the mylke commeth to the womans brestes.

Cap. xv.

I Shewed you here before, that to thre different partes & regions of the Matrix, there resorted from thre different partes of *vena caua*, thre sundrie vayne slippes. Now whiche of these slippes shoulde bryng the bloud

bloud called the Termes into the Matrix, or from which of them the Termes shoulde proceade, it is harde clearely to discusse, but only by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thyng very necessary to be knowen, for the redyer aduertisement howe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applied in that place, When neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the Termes by some casualtie stopped, or els contrary, to restrayne them immoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome vaynes of the Matrix do contayne only the Termes, then shoulde any medicine conueyed vnderneath profyte nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it may attayne within the holowneste of the Matrix, the whiche is verye litle when the woman is not with chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke vaynes of the Matrix do only conteyne these termes, then neded medicines to be applyed no farther then to that place. As for the thirde Matrix vaynes, there is none

that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to proceade from them: But many there be, Which do suppose the termes to issue both at the necke vaines and at the bottome vaynes also, but most notably at the necke vaines, for because (say they) that these vaynes do appeare more conspicuous and notable to the eyes When a Woman is cut open, then do the bottome vaines, Which may be very skantly perceiued, Wherfore they thinke that these necke vaynes shoulde be the greater stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) We se many tymes that after the Woman is conceaued, yet doth ther issue Termes tyl the third or fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth moneth, the Which nowe at this tyme can not proceade out of the Matrix, for the port or mouth therof, according to auc-thours opinions, is so closed after the seede conceaued, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter but by violence and force. Wherfore they conclude, that the Termes at this tyme muste needes

spryng

spryng out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaynes.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onlye out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selfe onlye within the Matrix, as maye be seene in the figure. For insomuch as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onlye to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to What purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaynes of the Matrix serue, Where there can neuer be any conception, nether the seede there can remayne: And as concernyng the issuyng of the Termes after conception, I saye that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as bloud is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betwene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes,

the poynte of a nedle wyll not easely enter, yet water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shall not folow that the seede shoulde passe out therat, aswell as the bloud, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfaste substaunce. And beslydes this, by that time that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix without great iniury.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Phisitions do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or waterishnes of the Matrix (whereby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneth, or other medi-

medicines at the mouth, to dry the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not vppon the commyng of them, for yf the Woman should be conceyued vpon the comming of the sayde Termes, then Woulde they commixt them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryne or caule, Whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceyued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong rime or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettyng forth of the Termes, they shalbe the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne thẽ selues with the feature, by meanes of caules wherein the feature is inuolued, and chiefely of *Chorion* named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayde

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben there or foure Wekes in the Wombe, it is not of sufficient quantitie to consume into his nutriment al the bloud that was wont to resort into the Matrix vaynes, wherfore the first, second, yea, & third moneth sometimes at the womans wont tyme of Termes, there issueth and sheweth some bloud more or lesse, the more in thē whiche were wont at other tymes to haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye shall note that when the child is conceiued, & that the caule *Chorion* is fastened & basted to the matrix by the vaines therof, yet do not al the vaines of the matrix attaine to the said *Chorion*, but a certaine so far as *Chorion* doth reach, howbeit the larger that *Chorion* groweth with ỹ child, the mo vaynes doth he couer, wherfore frō those vaynes that be not yet affixed vnto *Chorion*, do the termes flow at this time: But whē the child beginneth once to come to a greater perfectiō & growth, then is all the Terme bloudde reserued

in

in the Matrix, as little enough to satis-
fie the chylde, and then also part therof
mounteth vp into the brestes, and becō-
meth mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confirme myne opini-
on, that the Termes do onlye issue out
of the vaute of the Matrix: Ye shall vn-
derstande, that at sundry tymes I haue
had two diuers women in cure, the one
in London, and the other in Paris: Of
which, the one by a fall of her horse, the
other by a violent thruste and squat on
the buttockes vpon the harde stones in
the street, beyng both neare the tyme of
theyr purgation, chaunsed also both of
them into one maner of disease (that is
to say) immediatly herevppon, theyr
Termes dyd issue. And so continued
dayly to the one of them, the space of
halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere,
so that after that time the Termes stay-
ed agayne, and issued no more dayly as
before, but once in foure Wekes, at what
time they voyded great lumpes, kakes,
or cloddes of bloud, congealed together

euen lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betwene eche voydyng of these lumpes of bloud, (whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure wekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare, the particuler occasions of this maner of voydyng of the Termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix vaynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of bloud, and that nerer theyr tyme of purgation, vppon whiche bracke, the bloud dayly issued afterward, whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the Matrix, by little and little decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnes succeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, wexed the more contract and narower, for colde closeth, knitteth and congeleth, hereto helpyng not a little the great vse of colde byndyng medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to

this place at the simple counsayle of ignozaunt persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed and cõtracted, the bloud wont alwayes dayly to procede, remayneth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the vaynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let bloud in a basin or other vessell, and that the bloud stande styll in it, the space of. v. or. vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and sitting aboue vpon the face of it: and euen so is it of the bloud congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this congiled bloud conceaued together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce, it issueth out together, with farre greater perill, daunger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The whyte flowres that yssued, during

ring the time that this bloud gathered in the Matrix, Was (no doubt) the very Waterysshe part, that fleted When the bloud congiled, for that Water can neuer congile as the bloud doth, Wherfore euery day as fast as the bloud dyd congyle in the Matrix, so faste also dyd the Water seperate it selfe from the bloud, and so yssued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignoraũt that the very White flowres in dede do proceade from the seede cariars, into the angles or corners of the Matrix, and so frõ thence outwarde, the Which disease also men haue many tymes. And it commeth eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptiõ and euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose may be sufficient euidences, that the Termes spring alwaies frõ within the Matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene diuers other women, in Whom their Termes haue staied, the space of. vi. viii. x. Wekes, Wherewith

their bellies haue encreased and wexed bigger, so that they haue thought thē-selues to be with chylde. Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded suche lyke lumpes of bloud, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relanked and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke any moze of the nature and course of the Termes, and now wil I declare somwhat of the conueyaunce & course of the milke into the Womans brestes, foz there is great affinitie, communitie, and familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, whiche naturally do perceyue and feele anone, when the Matrix hath conceyued and then begin they to brue & to make ready theyr part, agaynst the time that the Matrix hath all done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to moste mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the sayde Terme shoulde attayne from the Matrix to the breastes, ye shall vnderstand, that the vppermost and greatest vayne of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the xiii.chap. Where it attaineth the hockle bone, redye to passe out of the holonesse of the belly into the thigh, before that it perse the kell called *Peritonium*, it sendeth foorth a notable vayne braunch, which from hence mounteth vpwarde alonge the belly betwene the right Muskle and the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, where the extreme or vpper ende thereof deuideth it selfe in manyfolde litle braunches, meetyng and entermynglyng them selues with the extreme litle braunches or slippes of another lyke vayne, descendyng from the vppermost chestbone, downe along the inside of the chest, and the inside of the vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete with the foresayde mountyng vayne, a litle aboue the nauell.

And ye shall note, that this vayne

braunche proceadyng from *vena caua*, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner syde of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne little slippes and small braunches of it self betwene the ribbes into the brestes. Wherfore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descendyng vayne braunches at both sides of the body, & the other ascendyng vayne braunches on both sydes of the belly, there shoulde be great communitie and felowship betwene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the Wombe.

For doutlesse by common experience, ye may se that when the time of conceptiõ in women is, & that by this meanes the Termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminish and waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery daye more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood wonte at other tymes to voyde in the name of Termes, now at this tyme by the prudencie and prouisiõ of nature, is retay-

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another Waye, that is to say, sent from the vaynes of the Matrix parte thereof vpwarde by the forenamed ascendyng vayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descendyng brest vaynes, through whom it is caryed into the brestes, Where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into Whyte mylke, being before red bloud, redy now prepared to norysshe the chylde When nature shall sende it out to the worlde. ot

Agayne, so long as the woman geueth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be euidences that there should be great familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, forsomuch as the ebbyng of the one is the flowyng of the other. Wherefore Phisitions sometymes, When the flowres issue more vehemently then needeth, they set boxyng glasses vnder the

brestes, meanyng therby to reuert and returne vpwarde, the matter enclined to much downewarde, the which practise how much it preuayleth, I wyl not here dispute. Yet in this matter to discusse the very veritie as neare as reason and the knowledge of Anothomie wyll geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my sayinges that I shoulde meane that alwayes when the termes stoppe beneath by any colde, thought, or other occasions, by and by the same bloudde to stye and mount vp into the brestes, & there to become milke: for the contrary hereof is dayly seene. For most commonlye they in whom these termes do stop, for any other cause then conception, the superfluous bloud retayned in the body, and in the vaynes wandryng, causeth to the partie great headache, taketh awaye theyr stomacke, and engendreth diuers other inconueniences, neither in the meane whyle is ther any thyng the more mylke in the brestes.

Wherfore ye may well saye, that the

cause of plentie of mylke in the womãs
brestes in time of her being with chylde,
and much more afterwarde, commeth
chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction,
whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at
that tyme more then at any other, to
draw vnto it selfe greater abundaunce
of bloud, conuertyng and alteryng the
same by the propertie of the place, into
conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe
the brest, the Termes to be by any occa-
sion stopped beneath, but there must al-
so concurre the attractiue power, inset
in the brestes to drawe the sayde bloud
(matter at other tymes of the Termes)
without which attraction, be the Ter-
mes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the
brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaũce
that this attractiue power halte or be
not able to attract sufficient matter to
make mylke vpon for the Infant, then
Phisitiõs are wont to help the debilitie
of nature, with cuppyng glasses set vp-
on or vnder the brestes, or els with gen-

tle

tle attractiue emplasters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resorte great store of other vaynes, some descending from the vaines of the shoulders, & other some from the vaines passyng by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bygnesse, much surmount the quantitie of the abouenamed descendyng brest vaynes, as it maye appeare euidently in many Women which haue these vaynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicious & sightful: yet not withstandyng it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred onlye vpon the bloud mountyng from the aforesayde ascendyng Matrix vaynes, and not vppon the bloud conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conspicious so euer they be, so that the bloud in them comprehended, serueth onelye to the norysshement of the substaunce of the brestes

vyestes themselues, and not to the maintenaunce of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner that nature vseth in circulatyng of the attracted blond, Wherby alterations is made from one colour to another, Wold require a longer processe, the which for breuitie We Wil omit at this time, With many other problemes, doubtes, and difficulties concernyng the same. And so We make an ende of this first Booke.

The fyrst Booke.

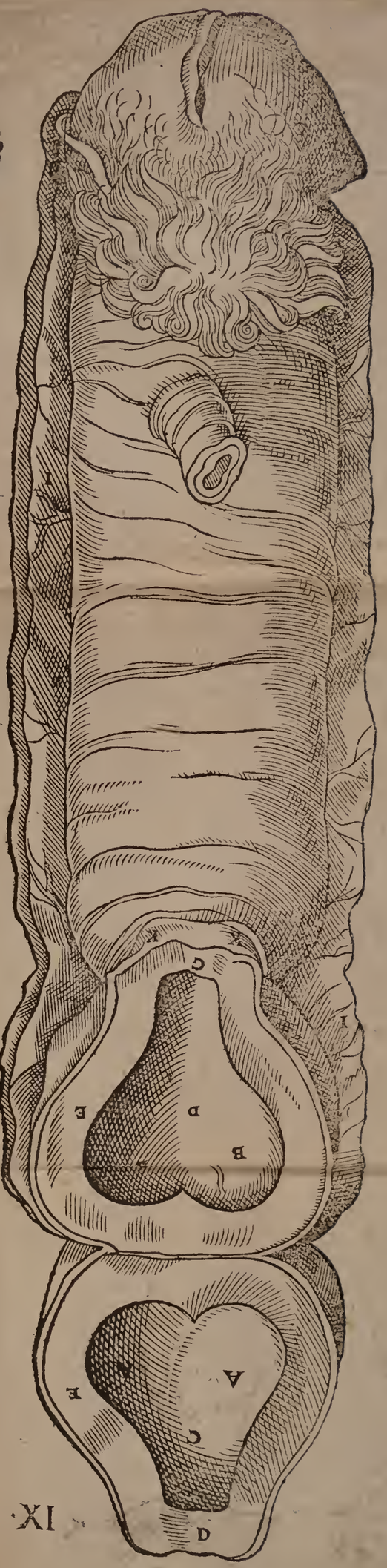
¶ The declaration by letters, of the figures folowyng, wherin be set forth to the eye, euery part in woman, mentned in ths booke before: Which in the former pryntynges hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

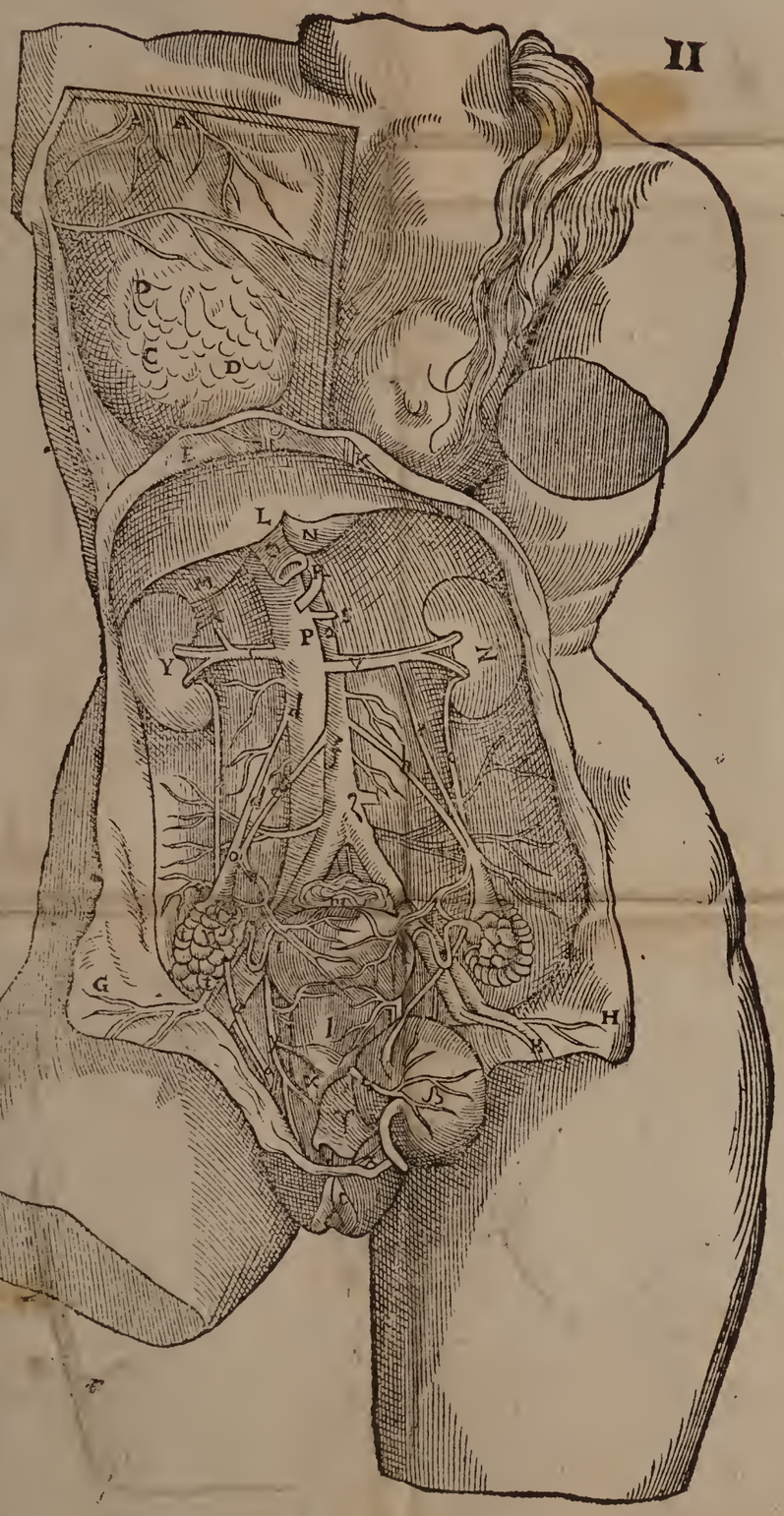
¶ The fyrst figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and caracters of the same.

IN this fyrste fygure is set foorth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laide on the ground, whose *Peritonium* is opened with the Muskels of the Abdomen, and turned ouer towarde ỹ inside, accordyng to the vse of cuttynge. and afterward we haue cut awaye all the bowelles or entrayles from *mesenterium*, the strayte entrayle beynge yet left in the bodye, with also the whole *Mesenterium*, whose pannicles we haue here somwhat taken awaye, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of *mesenterium* might come to light, but this present fygure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde Matrix or wombe beynge moued. For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the Matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet wholly seene, lykewyse as in women some-

I.

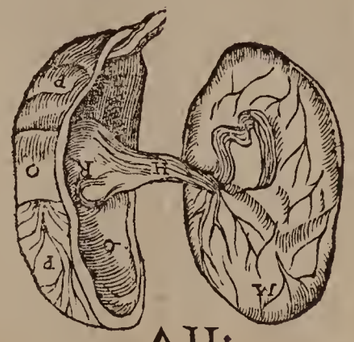
IIII.



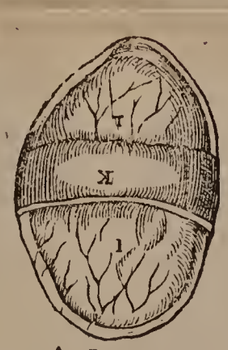


II

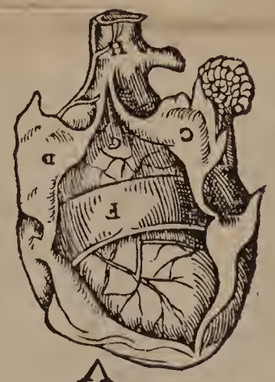
VIII.



VII.



VI.



V

III.

IX.

some

somwhat fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vexed and kylled with long sickues, and become moste leanest, then they shewe no kynde of processe of vessels, vnlesse the pannicles or thinne couerynges be seperated a sunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of *Peritonium*.

E E A part of *Mesenterium*, knitting the thinne intrayles to the backe.

F F Here is noted another pannicle of *Mesenterium*, plucked from the other which we haue marked with *G* and *G*. But both the pannicles do shewe the order of the vessels of *Mesenterium*, and order of the karnelles put betwene the distributions of the vessels.

H H In this part of *Mesenterium*, the entrayle *Colon* was committed and set to, where it was nyest to the straite gut.

I And in this part of *Mesenterium*, dyd consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle *Colon*, or his continuance with the thinne intrailes, and also the blynde gut.

K The strayte gutte beyng there cutte of where *Colon* dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the lowest turnyng ioynte of the loynes.

L The former seate of the bottom of the Matrix, from whence is nothing perceyued pluct away.

M The right stone or testicle in a women.

N The lefte stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entierly seene, although ther be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such maner set forth the ryght stone, for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bringeth downe the seede vessels of a woman, whiche do springe from *Peritonium*: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onlye without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in any part thereof, but lyeth there onlye.

O A pannicle springing and growyng forth from the right seate of *Peritonium*, and committing the ryght testicle with the seede vessels on this side, and those vessels, whiche infolde the higher seate of the Matrix to the backe, contaynyng together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the Matrix.

P This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshie fibres or thinne skinnes, constitutyng the ryghte Muskle of the Matrix or wombe.

QQ With these karacters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, whiche the foresayd OO did poynt to vs.

RS The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betwene R and S with that cote

whiche

whiche the partes of *Peritonium* offer vnto it, whiche vsyng forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to *Peritonium*: but the space beyng betwene hands doth shewe the largenes of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrynkles which are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the Matrix fallyng into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

T The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hynder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and ymagine this body of a woman, to be set vpryght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwise then the thing is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth muche higher then the bladder.

V This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cuttyng from *Peritonium*, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruyng properly to the chylde.

X A portion of a vayne goyng from the Nauell to the Lyuer.

Y Away goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and bringing from thence the vrine of the childe, betwene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shewe

Ke & Shewe two arteries creping forth hyther from the Nauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artyre, going principally to the holes of the bones aboue the priuie members.

¶ *The declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.*

WE haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates might as nigh as may be, be set before the eyes, and afterwarde we haue cut away the ventricle with the bowels, & also *Mesenterium* and the splene, leauyng the strayte entrayle in this place vnmedled with, alwell as we dyd in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoste cote whiche *Peritonium* gaue vnto it, cuttyng away also all the pannicles, that the vesselles carying forth the substaunce and matter of seede to the stones, & also the vessels carying away the seede from thence to the Matrix shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lefte syde, lykewyse breaking

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder should not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones aboue the priuie mẽbers, that the neckes of the matrix and of the bladder might the more commodiously be seene.

A A Vaynes running forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skinne, whiche is brought ouer the heyght of the shoulder.

B Vaynes springing from those baynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principall body of the teate.

D D Karnels and fatnesse spreade abrode euery where on the karnelly body, marked with *C*.

E F G H The hynder outsyde or inlyde of the former seate of *Peritonium* outwarde. For the former region of *Peritonium* is here bowed vpwarde and downewarde towarde the syde.

I K Portions of Vaynes and also Artires, crepyng forth downewarde, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybosite or swellyng seate of the lyuer.

M The holowe part of the lyuer is here also somewhat seene.

N A small portion or peece of the Vayne goyng from the Nauell to the Liuer.

O The stocke of *Vena porta* is here cut away, with

the vessells brought vnto it.
P The holowe vayne.
Q The great Artyre.
R The rootes of the Artyres goyng to the ventricle, the lyuer, the splene, the caule, and to the bowelles.
S The beginning of a vayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.
T The vayne and Artyre whiche bryngeth the whayishe humour to the ryght kydney.
V The vayne and Artyre whiche bringeth the wayishe humour to the left kydney.
X The begynnyng of a vayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.
Y The former seate of the ryght kydney.
Z The former seate of the left kydney.
aa The way that bryngeth the vrine from the ryght kydney, into the bladder, but at the nethermour, a is broken away, but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder marked with b.
b The way that caryeth forth the vrine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.
cc The way that caryeth forth the vrine from the left kydney into the bladder.
dd The ryght seede vayne, whose begynnyng the hygher d doth shewe.
e The seede vayne goyng to the left testicle.
f The springing forth of the Artires of seede.
g The ryght seede Artire.
h The left seede Artire.
ikl The former part of the bottome of the Matrix,

trix, and i sheweth the right blunte angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the Matrix, where the mouth of his bottom consisteth, and where his necke beginneth.

m This is the strayte gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Karacters but on the one side only.

n A portion of the Vayne and Artyre of seede, whiche do go to the vpper seate of the bottome of the wombe.

o Portions of the Vaynes and Artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the saide roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that saide body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, committing and ioynyng the testicle to *Peritonium*.

r The former face or part of the testicle.

s The begynnyng of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

t: The bowyng and turnynges ouer agayne of the vessell which beareth forth the seede, whiche turnynges the sayde vessell maketh rounde about the sydes of the testicle.

u The goyng forth of the vessell whiche caryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

xx The necke of the Matrix.

y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z A vayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the vrine.

μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

r The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

σ In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

ε Small skinnie portions of flesshe of the necke of the mouth or opening of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, nede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

} The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of *Mesenterium*.

α Vessels which do ascende and rise vpwarde to the Muskles of the *Abdomen*, from the Vaines and Artires whiche do go into the legge.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the thirde figure of women.

THis present figure sheweth the Matrix or wombe, with the thinne couerynges whiche do bynde it to *Peritonium*, cut forth from the body, and the

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or openyng of the bottome of the Matrix doth here manyfestlye shewe it selfe. And we haue lykewyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manyfestlye sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the Matrix, beyng not yet vncouered of any pannicle.
B B The necke of the Matrix.
C A parte of the bottome of the Matrix, swellyng foorth into the vpper seate of the necke of the Matrix, in maner of a karnell.
D The mouth of the bottome of the Matrix.
E E A pannicle knittyng the Matrix to *Peritonium*, and conteynyng his vesselles.
F The left testicle of the Matrix.
G The vayne and artire of seede.
H Portion of the seede vayne and artire, commynge to the vpper seate of the bottome of the Matrix.
I A portion of the seede vayne and Artire commyng to the testicle.
K The vessell carying the seede from the testycle into the Matrix.
L The holownes of the bladder.
M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.
N Here hangeth foorth a lyttle peece of the wayes of the brine.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the fourth Table of women.

ε Small braunches running foorth into the pannicle where they are committed and ioyned to *Peritonium*.

ι A portion of the Vayne and Artire goyng into the testicle, fallyng to the bpper seat of the bottome of the Matrix.

μ The commixtion and goyng together of the seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of a steple, which we lyken to the braded baynes called *Varices*.

λ The left testycle.

μμ The bessell caryeng foorth the seede from the testycle into the Matrix.

ν The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of the Matrix, in whom the bessell that bryngeth foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

ξ In this seate the bottome of the Matrix is ended into the necke therof, and in this region or place is the begynnyng of the mouth or openyng place therof.

ΘΤΥ The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

ς Here the necke of the blader is brought forth into the necke of the Matrix, and there endeth.

ς Those are bessels infolding the nether seate of the bottome of the Matrix, and also his necke.

τ τ The swellyng brymmes at the mouth of the necke of the Matrix.

vv The wayes that bryngе the brine from the raynes in the bladder.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the. v. vi. vii. and. viii. figures.

WE haue now deuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynynge a male chylde, on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another whiche are ouerthwart slytte, remouyng and takyng awaye into the sydes, partes of the coates of the bottome of the Matrix, yea, euen from the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

A B C D The inner syde of the sayde infolder of the Matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

E E The vtter syde of the Matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top or the ryght angle or corner of the Matrix, brought forth vpwarde and toward the ryght syde, more then toward the left, because it is a man chyld which is in ỳ wombe.

F The fyfte or the vttermost infolder of the chylde.

G G The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

also a great part sene.

H A part of the necke of the Matrix. to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a vayne and an Artire. which is principally dystributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I Here is also yet left the ryght testicle. that the situacion of it myght be sene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

¶ The syxte Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

K THE vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

L L The secõd infolder of the chyld which forsomuch as it is transpernaũt in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde, bewrapt within this third infolder, in it somewhat to be sene.

In the seuenth table we haue deuided the vtter and the second infolder of the chylde, with a longe section or cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed foorth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the third infolder, and the thyrde infolder also yet whole.

M M The thyrde or the inmoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one may easely see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N The proceadyng or order of Waynes and Artires. goyng to the Nauyll from the first infolder of the chylde.

O P O P The seconde infolder of the chylde. And O O shewe his inlyde, where P P sheweth his vtter lyde.

Q R The fyrste infolder of the chylde, where Q noteth the outlyde, and R the inlyde, but the proceadynge and order of the vesselles by the seconde and the thyrde infolder are perfectely knowen, without any helpe of Karacters.

AND the eyght Table expresseth the chyld delyuered from all his coates, and so it sheweth hym lying. by the wonderfull prouidence of nature, not as the common opinion of the bulger sorte of wryters affirmeth, but as you may here se in these figures, & so doth it lye in the middest of the wombe. For it is most vntrue that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde, lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees should touche to the face, but as he is set here in the viii. figure. And obseruyng this true situacion of hym, you shall fynd commonly none other situacion of the chylde, nor ioynyng of any ioynt of hym therin, then is here expressed.

But in this figure M M N O P O P Q & R do note the same as in the seuenth Table, saue that M & M do shewe the inlyde, or inner parte of the thyrde infolder. But s sheweth here priuately the goyng foorth of the vesselles of the

Nauyll

Nauyll, which is betwene the Nauyll and the ioynyng together of the vessels with the thirde infolder, which is also brought foorth with a greate space betwene the shewyng, where bee certayne (as it were) knottes or swellynges, accordynge to the numbre of the whiche knottes more or lesse, Wydwyues folyshelye do prophesie eyther many or fewe chyldren to the woman, which of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasye, and worthy of reprehention. And moreouer when the chylde commeth foorth (as it chaunseth sometymes) hauynge that about his necke, they saye that it is the same childes destenye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceiptes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the nynth fygure of women.

AND the nynth figure sheweth the Matrix cut foorth of the bodye, beyng of that bygnesse as it was seene taken foorth of a woman at the laste Anothomye, which I did se at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italy. And moreouer we haue so deuyded and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceaued, and the thicke substaunce also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, when they

they be not with chylde.

AABB The concauitie and holowe bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

CD A line somwhat after the maner of a seame called in Latyn *Scortum*, whiche doth belonge to the place wherein the testycle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat foorth into the bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the Matrix.

FF A portion of the innermore bottome of the Matrix, swellyng foorth downeward from the hygher seate of the Matrix, into the holownes and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginnyng of the necke or the opening place of the bottome of the Matrix.

HH The seconde or vttermore infolder of the bottome of the Matrix, discended frō *Peritonium*.

II Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from *Peritonium*, and conteynyng the Matrix.

K Here is also sene the substaunce of the necke of the Matrix, because the cuttyng wherwith we deuyded the bottome of the Matrix, was begunne at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, inplanted into the necke of the Matrix, castynge foorth into it the vrine. The swellyng partes of *Abdomen* and whatsoeuer is els to be considered therof, they may be sufficiently knowen without derection of Karacters.

FINIS.

The second Booke.

¶ Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called naturall or vnnaturall. Cap. i.

IN the first Booke We haue sufficientlye set foorth and described the maner, situation, & fourme of the Matrix Wherein man is conceaued, With diuers other matters appendyng and concernyng the better vnderstandyng of the same. And nowe here in this seconde Booke We wyll declare the maner of the quytyng and deliueraunce of the Infant out of the mothers Wombe, With other thinges thereto appertaynyng. And first here in this Chapter We wyl declare the tokens and signes Whereby ye may perceiue Whether the tyme of labour be neare or not: For When the houre of labour approcheth neare, these signes folowing euermore proceade and come before.

Tokens to know when the tyme of delyueraunce is nere.

First certaine doloures and paines begyn to growe about the guttes, the nauyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and lyke

lykewyse about the thighes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, Which likewyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is nere.

Two sortes of deliueraunce.

But ye shall note that there is two maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion. The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other they be dead before the birth or els line not long after.

The due fashion of byrth.

The due fashion of birth is this: first the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towarde the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde, beyng towardes the face

and

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrst of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde already in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of deliueraunce, the chylde lyeth in the mothers Wombe the head vpWard, and the feete doWneWarde, but When it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head doWneWarde, the feete vpWarde, and the face toWardes the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the deliueraunce is easie Without long tarying or looking for it.

Of byrth not naturall.

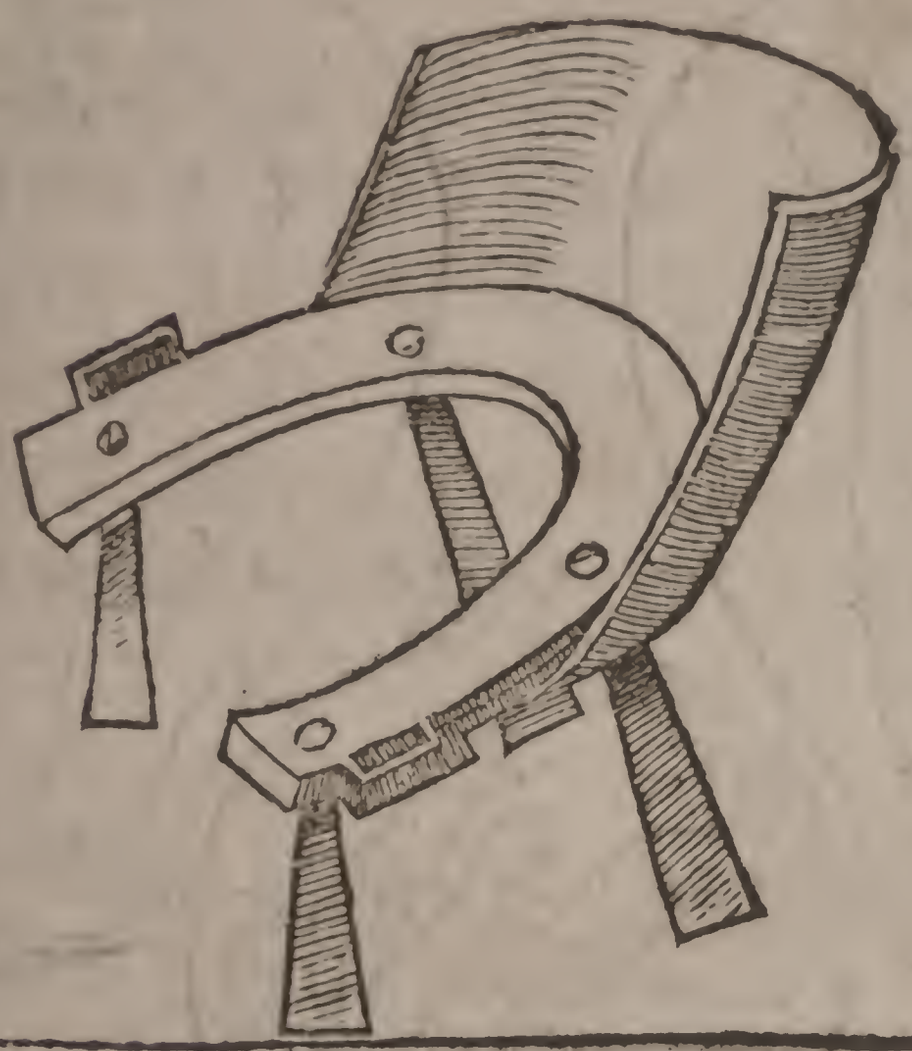
The byrth not naturall is, When the mother is deliuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after any other fashion then is here spoken of before: As When both the legges proceade first, or one alone, With both the handes vp, or both doWne, other els the one vp and the other doWne, and diuers otherWise, as shalbe hereafter more clearely declared.

Of

THE BIRTH FYGVRES

THE WOMANS STOOLE

THE



II

I

THE BYRTHE

III

IIII

V

VI

VII

FYGVRES

IX

VIII

X

XI

XII

THE BYRTHE FYGVRES

XIII

XIIII

XV

XVI

XVII

¶ Of easie and vneasie, difficult, or dolourous deliueraunce, and the causes of it: With the signes howe to knowe and forsee the same. Capit.ii.

Many perils chaunsing to women in their labour.

VEry many be the perilles, daungers and thronges, which chaunce to Women in theyr labour, Whiche also ensue and come in diuers wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as I shall here declare.

Fyrst When the Woman that laboureth is conceyued ouer yonge, as before xii. or. xv. yeres of age (Whiche chaunseth sometyme, though not very often) and that the passage be ouer anguste, streate, or narowe, other naturally, or els for some disease and infirmitie, Whiche may happen about that part, as apostumes, pusshes, pyles, or blysters, and such other. Though the whiche causes, nature can not (but With great dolour and payne) open and dilate it selfe, to the expelling and deliueraunce

of

of the chylde. And sometime the belike or bladder, or other intrayles beyng about the Matrix or Wombe, be also apostumate and blystered, whiche being greeued, the Matrix or Wombe likewise for vicinitie and neighbourhead is greued with them, & that hindereth greatlye the deliueraunce. Also sometime in the fundement are hemorrhodes or pilles and other pushes, chappynges or chynes, whiche cause great payne. Also hardnesse and difficultie or byndyng of the belly, which thinges for the griefe and payne that ensueth of them, causeth the woman to haue little power to helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake and of feble complexion, or of nature very colde, or to yonge, or very aged, or exceadyng grosse and fatte, or contrarywyse, too spare and leane, or that she neuer had childe before, or that she be ouer timorious and fearefull, dyuers, Wayward, or such one that wyll not be ruled, remouyng her selfe from one place

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche moze paynefull, cruell and dolorous, then it woulde otherwise be. Also ye muste vnderstande that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater growth, then that it may easly passe that narowe passage, oz contrarywise, if it be so faynt, weake and tender, that it cannot turne it selfe, oz doth it very slowly, oz yf the woman haue two chyldren at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster, as foz example, yf it hath but one body & two heades, as appeareth in the.xvii. of the birth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceadeth not in due tyme, oz after due fashion, as when it commeth forth with both feete oz both knees together, oz els with one foote onlye, oz with both feete downewardes, and both handes vpwardes, other els (the whiche is most perillous)

 sidelong,

sidelong, arselong, or backlong, other els (hauing two at a byrth) both proceade with theyr feete fyrst, or one with his feete, and the other with his head, by thole and dyuers other Wayes the Woman sustayneth great dolour, paine, and anguyshe.

Item, yf the woman sufferr aborsement, that is to saye, bryng forth her chylde in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the conception, whiche is before the due tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the porte of the Wombe is so firmely and strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the child be dead in the Mothers belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so much as it cannot be easely turned, neyther can it Welde or helpe it selfe to come forth, or if the child be sicke or Wraxened so that it cãnot for feblenes helpe it self.

To knowe whether the chylde be dead in the mothers belye.

The Which thing may be forsene and knowen by these tokens: If the Woman with chylde haue ben long sicke before her

her labour, if she haue ben sore lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowres, yf straight after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any milke, if the childe stirre not ne moue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be arguimentes and tokens that it shuld be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great peril in labouring, when the secondine or latter birth is ouer fyrme or stronge, and will not soone riue or breake a sunder, so that the child may haue his easie cõming forth. And contrarywyse, When it is ouer weake, slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sunder before that the chylde be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & gathered together, about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away soner then they shoulde do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities and moistures, which shuld cause it the easelyer to proceade, & with lesse payne.

Peryll in the secondine.

Excesse of heate or cold greatlye hyndereth the labour.

The byrth also is hyndered by ouermuche colde, or ouermuche heate, for in ouermuche colde, the passage and all other powers of the labouring woman, be coarcted and made narower then they woulde otherwyse be. Likewise ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth and faynteth both the woman and the chylde, so that neyther of them in that case, can wel welde or helpe them selues for faynтnes.

And farther if the woman haue vsed to eate cõmonly such meate or fruites which do exiccate or dry, and constraine or bynde, as Medlars, Chestnuts, and all sowre fruites, as Crabbes, Chokeperes, Quinces, and suche other, With ouer muche vse of Uergeus, and suche lyke sowre sauces, With Rise, Mill, and many other thinges, al this shall greatlye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the fifth moneth folowing the conception, or to bathe in such water where Alome is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges which

whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vsed ouer much watche and walkyng, eyther if she vsed a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, smell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe vpward the Mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feele payne only in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour, lykewise if she were wont in times passed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great labour alwayes in the birth.

Tokens of easy delyueraunce.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expedite and easy delyueraunce, be such as be contrary to all those that haue ben rehearsed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes passed, easyly to be delyuered, and that in her labour she feele but litle thyrong

or dolour, or though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the nether partes or bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good spede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, much stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paynes tomblyng in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and myghtie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her self to the deliueraunce of the birth. And againe, euyl signes be those, When she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer sore, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and sowne, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

¶ Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde labour.

Capit. iiii.

To

TO succoure and helpe them that are in such difficult peryl of labour, as We haue spoken of before, ye must obserue, kepe and marke those thinges that We shall (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowyng.

Howe the labour may be made more easy.

First the Woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must exchue & forbeare al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the Whiche occasions We rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which cannot be auoyded, forsomuch as it commeth by nature, or by long continuaunce and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the Whiche may somewhat asswage it, mollifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hynder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatiō

chaunce about the Mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and suche lyke, the Whiche thynges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be delyuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thinges to be loked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgion.

Also yf the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse the moneth before her labour suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples. Also to eate fygges in the mornyng fastyng, and at nyght, loseth well the belye. If these profite not, *Cassia fistula* taken iii. or. iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner, shal lose the belly without peryl.

Agayne

Agayne, in this case she must refraine from all such thinges as do harden, restrayne, and constipat, as meates broyled or rosted, and ryce, hard egges, bieſe, chestnuttes, and all sowre fruites, and such lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she may receaue a clyster, but it must be very gentle and easye, made of a pynt of the broth of a chickin or other tender fleshe, thereto puttyng so muche course suger or hony, as may make it reasonably sweete, & halfe a sponefull of whyte salt. Or for the poore woman maye be made a clyster of a pynt of water, wherin hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke, with hony and salt, as before. She may vse also some other easy and temperate purgation, to mollifie & lose her withall, as Mercury sodden with flesh in potage, and diuers such other, or els a suppositer tempered with sope, larde, or the yolkes of egges.

Thynges to lose the belly.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sickelye,

Wherewith to comforte the woman in her labour

lye, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drinke, holsome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the Whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such things the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth may the more frely proceade, and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges, which haue propertie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outward fomentations, bathynges, suppositories, and annoyntmentes.

Dyntmentes to souple.

Annoyntmentes wherewith ye maye sople the priuie place, be these. Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Olyue, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscosite of holyoke, and such other, & for drynke, let her vse good rype Wine mixed With water, also

there

there muste be a consideration in the dietyng of the Woman, that she maye vse such thynges the Which may moysten her, and not make her fatte. Contrarywise, let her auoyde such thynges the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, constrayne, or coarct her, and that all the moneth before her labour. But about ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele anye payne or griefe) lette her vse euery day to washe or bathe her with warme Water, in the Which also that she tarye not ouerlong in bathyng for Weakning of her, and therein let her stande, so that the Water come aboue the nauyll a little, and also seathe in the Water Malowes, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges whiche haue vertue to mollifie and sople. And yf it be so, that for Weakenesse of the body she may not endure this bathyng in warme Water, then With a spounge or other cloth dypped in the foresayde bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete,

Wathes to lose and gentyly to open the body.

her

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the whiche thynges shall greatly profite to her. But in suche tyme beware ye come not in the common hot houses, for they would cause you to be feeble and faynt, which were yll in this case.

And when ye are thus bathed or wāshed, then shall it be very conuenient for you to annoynt with the forsayde greces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyll, sydes, and suche places as are neare to the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shalbe greatlye profitable for her to conuey inwarde into the priuie part these forsaid oyles or greces with a spunge, or other thyng made for the purpose, she lying vpryght, the myddes of her bodye most hyest, so that it maye the better remayne within her, and that chiefly yf the Matrix be drie, other els the partie very leane and spare.

Annoynt mētes to sople.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to suffume the nether places with Muske, Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on embres, yelde a goodlye sauour, by the which

Sweete fumes.

whiche the neather places open themselfe, and drawe downeward.

Also as I sayde before, she must take good hede to her diet, that she take thinges the which may comfort and strengthen the body, feeding not ouermuch of any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and well sauering wine, or other drinke, also moderatly to exercise the body in doing some thyng, styrring, mouyng, goyng, or standyng, more then otherwyse she was wont to do, these thinges farther the byrth and make it the easier, and this is the maner of diet the which we aduise the woman to kepe the moneth before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the which she ought to obserue in the tyme of labour, when the stormes and thronges begyn to come on, and the humours which yet hitherto haue remained about the Matrix or Mother collected, nowe beginne to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet consisteth in two sortes. First that such thinges be procured and had in redines, which

What is to be done whē the time of labour is come

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be verye easie. Secondly, to withstand, defende and to put away so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touchyng this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rising againe) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, crying or reachyng so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verye good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that thorowe that meanes the guttes and intrayles be thrust together and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receyue some medicine to prouoke the byrth, of the whiche we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceyueth the Matrix or Mother to waxe laxe or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours yssue forth in great plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leanyng backwarde in maner vpright. For the which purpose in some regions

Of the Midwyfes stoole.

(as

(as in Fraunce and Germany) the Mid-wifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hye from the grounde, be made so compasse wise and caue or holowe in the middes, that that may be receyued from vnderneth whi-che is looked for, and the backe of the stole leanyng backwarde, receyueth the backe of the woman, the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of laboure is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwife may remoue from one side to another accordyng as necessitie shall require. The Midwife her selfe shall sit before the labouryng woman, and shall diligentlye obserue and wayte, howe much, and after what meanes the chylde styrreth it selfe, also shall with her, handes fyrst annoyn-ted with the Dyle of Almondes, or the Dyle of whyte Lillies, rule and dy-rect euery thyng as shall seeme best.

Also

The Wydwyfe must geue comfortable wordes to the partie trauailing.

Also the Wydwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onlye refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a spedefull deliueraunce, encouraging and enstomakyng her to pacience and tolleraunce, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also strekyng gentilly with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and if the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lie groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annointing also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Wydwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straightes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Widwife aboue all

all thinges take heede of that ye compel not the Woman to labour before the byrth come forward, and shewe it selfe. For before that tyme, all labour is in vayne, labour as much as ye liste. And in this case many times it commeth to passe, that the partie hath laboured so sore before the time, that when she shuld labour in deede, her might and strenght is spente before in vayne, so that she is not now able to helpe her selfe, and that is a perillous case.

To labour much before the due time doth but feeble the woman, and nothing profit.

Furthermore when the Secondine or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth is wrapped and conteyned) doth once appeare, then maye ye knowe that the labour is at hand, wherfore if the same secondine breake not of his owne kinde, it shalbe the Mydwyfes part and office, with her nayles easely and gentelly to breake and rent it, or yf that maye not conueniently be done, then rayse vp betwene your fingers a peece of it, and cut it of with a payre of sheeres, or sharpe knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

With the cut. This done, by and by en-
sueth consequently the flux and flowe
of humours, of the whiche I spake be-
fore, and then next followeth imminediat-
lye the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Secon-
dine should be cut by the Midwyfe, and
all the watery part issued and spent be-
fore due tyme & necessitie should require
it, so that the priuie passage be lefte exi-
cate and dry, the byrth not yet appea-
ryng, and by this meanes the labour
shoulde be hyndered and letted. In this
case ye shall annoynt and mollifie that
priuie passage with the oyle of whyte
Lillies, or some of the greses spoken of
before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed
into the priuie partes, the whiche thin-
ges wyll cause the way to be slippery,
souple, and easie for the byrth to passe.
But chiefely in these difficulties, should
profite, the whyte of an egge together
with the yolke powred into the same
place, whiche should cause it to be most
slypperye and slydyng, and supplye the
rowine

towne of the naturall humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commyng forth, then muste the Mydwyfe helpe all that she may, With her hande fyrst annoynted With some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the Way, that the yssue may be the freer. Likewise must be done yf she beare two chyldren at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, When that fyrst proceadeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordinately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowyng. The head proceedyng fyrst.

ii. But When the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye With her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaūseth the chyld to come the legges & both armes & handes downeward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth The legges & both hands downe, proceeding first.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Mydwyfe must do all her payne with tender handlyng and anoyntyng to receyue forth the chylde, the legges being still close together, and the handes likewise remayning, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure. Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Mydwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst forth, vpwardes agayne by the bellyward, so that the head myght descende downeward by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturally agayne and without perill myght it proceade and come forth as the fyrst.

For this potalei Verbum

The thirde of the byrth figures.

iii. Agayne somtime the byrth commeth forth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillouste maner of byrth that is, as appereth in the third of the birth figures. And here must the Mydwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (if it may be possi-

possible) to the first figure, and if it wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the second figure. But if this also wyll not be, then receyue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre lynnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the birth tyll al be come forth, and this is very ieoperdous labour.

because the arms be out of the way and the head.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth commeth forwarde with one foote only, the other being left vpwarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouryng woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng vp her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her body, then let the Mydwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that commeth out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styrre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styrryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

The fourth figure.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the Woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstandyng the mothers styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softlye fetche out the other legge Whiche remayned behynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handelyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hanging downeward towarde the feete.

The fyfth figure.

v. Lykewyse sometyme it commeth to passe, that the side of the chylde commeth forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Mydwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

The syxth figure.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde commeth foorth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroade, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwife see, that the feete and legges maye be ioyned together, and so to proceade and come forth, euer-

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure, then muste the Mydwyfe put vp the birth, tyl such time as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afore. The seuenth figure.

viii. When the chylde cõmeth headlong, one of the handes commyng out and appearyng before, as in the .viii. figure, then let the birth proceade no farther, but let the Mydwyfe put in her hande, and tenderlye by the shoulders thruste in the byrth agayne, so that the hand may be resetteled in his place, and the byrth to come forth ordinately and naturally, as in the first figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thighes and belly vpwardes, and her head dowrewardes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then bryng her to her seate agayne. The eyght figure. Hand & head.

ix. But yf it proceade with bothe The nynth figure.

handes forwardes, then muste ye lykewise do as afore, by the shoulders thrustyng it backe agayne, vntyll such time as the hands lye close to the sides, & so to come forth, as apeareth in the .ix. figure

The .x. figure

x. But when it commeth arsward, as in the .x. figure maye be seene, then must the Mydwife with her handes returne it agayne, vntyll such tyme that the birth be turned, the legges and feete forwarde, other els, yf it maye be so, it were best that the head might come forwarde, and so naturally to proceade.

The leuenth figure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and come forth first with the shoulders, as in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayre and softlye thruste it backe agayne by the shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head come forwarde.

The twelfth figure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth foorth with both the handes and both the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure, then must the Mydwyfe tenderly take the chylde by the head, and returne the legges vpwarde, & so to receiue it forth.

xiii. And

xiii. And when it cõmeth brestward as in the .xiii. figure, the legges & handes bydyng behynde, then let the Midwyfe take it by the feete or by the head, which that shalbe moste apt and commodious to come forwarde, returnyng the rest vpward, & so to receiue it forth: but if it may be hedling that shalbe best

The. xiii. figure.

xiiii. Nowe sometome it chaunceth the Woman to haue two at a burthen, & that both proceade together headlong, as in the .xiiii. figure, and then must the Mydwyfe receyue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whyleste she taketh the first.

The. xiiii. figure.

xv. If both come forth at once with theyr feete forward, then must the Midwife be very diligent to receiue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before.

The. xv. figure.

xvi. When the one commeth headlong, the other fotewyse, then must the Mydwyfe helpe the byrth that is moste. neareste the issue, and it that commeth footelong (if she can) to returne it vpon

The. xvi. figure.

the

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng euer heede that the one be not noysome to the other in receyuyng forth of eyther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwyfe often tymes annoynt & mollifie the waye and passage with some of the foresayde oyntmentes, to make the womans labour so muche the easyer, and haue the lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there chaunce to be any Apostume or disease about those places in this time, by such annoyntyng to alaye and swage the payne, so that for the time it may be the lesse griefe to the partie, as I spake before also. And for them that be in this case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy woman.

¶ Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made more tollerable, easy, and without great payne. Cap. v.

The

THe thynges which helpe the birth & make it more easy, are these. First the woman that laboureth must eyther sytte groucling, or els vpright leaning backwarde, accordyng as it shall seme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in Winter or colde weather, the chamber wherin she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hotte Wether, let in the ayre to refreshe her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour, the woman faint and sowne. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther with the powder of *Eleborus*, or els of pepper. Also the sides of the woman muste be stroken downeward with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly and furthereth. And let the Mydwyfe alwaye be very diligent, prouidyng and seing what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoyntyng the priuities with oyle, or other such grece as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Meanes to helpe & prouoke the birth.

Take

A good mollyfying oyntment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of muske, & therewith annoynt the secrete partes. If this profyte nothyng, then vse this fumigation.

Take Myrrhe, *Galbanum*, *Castorium*, lette those be beaten, and make lyke pylles of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylles, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowe brymstone, Myrrhe, *mader*, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponacum*, of eche lyke much, and temper all those together, makyng of them pylles, and with those also ye maye make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dunge, or of Hawkes dunge, by puttynge to of *Oppoponacum*, is souereigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in delyueraunce.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conueye into the secretes. Also the powder of *Aristolochia rotunda*, or the roote called *Bothor martis*, *Ciclaminus*, or *malum terre*, or the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrapped in woll, and conueyed inwarde prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take *Heleborus*, *Oppoponacum*, and wrappe them together in Wooll, and minister them inwarde, for that wyll bryng forth and prouoke the birth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the

rynde

rynde and barke called *Cassia lignea* beaten to powder, and tempered with wyne and dronken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item *Asa fedida*, of the bygnesse and wayght of a pease, myngled together with *Castorium* of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wyne mixt with water, and so dronken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell dronke with wyne, is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of Fenigreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewe Flouredeluce, a smale quantitie tempered therwithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. Also *Cassia lignea* and *Asa fetida* dronke with wyne, be very good for the same.

Also holyoke sodden in conduite water and dronken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the whiche this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell or Cinamome and Sauine, of eche a dram, of *Cassia lignea* a dram and a halfe, of Myrrhe, *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Costus amarus*, of eche a dram, of *Storax liquida* halfe a dram, and of *Oppium* the wayght of.xii. graynes, beate these all together, and fourme them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles with

with two ounces of good olde wyne.

Item Saffron and *Syler montanum* prouoketh the byrth of any liuing thing, if it be dronken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take. v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or herbe grace one dragma and an halfe, of Juniper beryes two drammes, of *Asa fedida*, *Amoniacum*, Wadder, of eche two drammes, of these make pylles, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the whiche is sodden Sauine and Peniriall, or els with the broth of *Cicercula*, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of *Asa fetida*, *Amoniacum* and Wadder, of eche halfe a dram, these temper together in pilles, and geue her with wyne, one dram of the same.

Item, take of *Aristolochia longa*, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wyne, and make pylles of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylles be of suche efficatie and strength, that it alleuiateth and vnpayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alyue or dead.

Item, take of whyte *Pedellium*, Myrre, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with *Cassia lignea*, and Honye, and make pylles of them to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylles geue at ech time fiue to the labouryng waman,

whiche

whiche be of the same might and strength, that the other pilles spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrre, *Castorium*, and *Storax*, of eche one dramme, temper them with Honye, and make pylles of it: these for this purpose excell and passe all other, they be of suche vertue and strength in operation.

¶ A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wylde Goward, and seeth it in water, in the same water temper Myrre, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thinges together, and make it plasterwyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betwene the Nauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke byrth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all such thinges for breuitie and shortnes, We haue set here onlye a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Retention of the Placenta

The seconde booke.

¶ Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde.

Capit. v.

HEre also sometime it commeth to passe, that the Secondine which is wont to come together with the byrth, remayne and tarry behynde, and folowe not, and that for diuers causes. One is, for because peradeuenture the woman hath ben so sore weakened and feeblished with trauaile, dolour, and payne of that first byrth, that she hath no strength remaynyng to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the seconde byrth. Another may be, that it be entangled, tyed, or let within the matrix (which chaunceth many times) or that it be destitute of humors, so that the water be flowen from it sooner then time is, whiche shoulde make the places more slippery and more easie to passe thorow: Or els that the places ouer wered with long and sore labour, for

Inserted

Included adhesion

* "Cat'ni old sayleth
Hecomes "Heirdsmen."
"By heavens Ile make a ghost of-
him that Cato see."
Hamlet-
Shakespeare.

for payne contract or gather together, and enclose themselfe agayne, or that the places be swolne for anguishe and payne, and so let the commyng forth of the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoeuer cause it be thus stopped, the Mydwyfe in any wyse muste fynde such meanes, that it may be vnlooséd and expulsed. For otherwise, great inconueniencie shoulde chaunce to the partie, & specially suffocation and choking of the Matrix, whiche also must so much the more be taken hede to, for because the seconde byrth retayned and kept within, wyll soone putrifie and rot, wherof will ensue yll noysome & pestiferous vapours ascendyng to the hart, the brayne, & the midriffe, through the which meanes the woman shalbe short wynded, faynte harted, often soundyng and lying without any maner of mouyng or styrryng in the pulces: yea, and many times is playnely suffocated, strangled, and dead of it. Wherefore that none of these thynges

happen, with all diligence and payne it muste be prouyded that the secondine be expelled.

Yf retention of it come by Weakenes of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted and strēgthed with good comfortable meates and drinkes Whiche may enhart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or with good olde Wyne, and good fat and tidie flesshe, or Byrdes, Hennes flesshe, Capons, Partrige, Pigins and such like.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matrix is swollen for long paine, then must be vsed such thinges to prouoke it out, the whiche do make the waye slipper, sople, & easie for it to proceade, with the oyles or ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of *Maioram*, and of bleWe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or *Galbanum* beaten to powder and dronke with luke warmed Wyne, Wyll cause the same to yssue

pssue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Pentriall sodden in Wyne, and the decoction dronken, is of the same vertue.

Item, to suffume the secretes With the perfumes Written of before, is good for this purpose, and the vapour of the water in Whiche Mallowes, Holyoke, and Berefoote be sodden, receyued beneth, is lyke good.

Also to washe that partes in Water, in Whiche is sodden branne, or to holde a lyttle baggefull of sodden branne to the place, and therewithall to soke the place, is very profitable.

But if the retention of the secondine come by reason that it is entangled or fastened in some place of the Matrix, so that it Wyll not resolue ne loose, then make a fume vnderneath of Brimstone, Jute leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cresses and fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete smelling thynges, as Ambre, Muske, Frankencense, *Gallia Muscata*, and confec-

tion neare, the which sauoures and perfumes put on the embers, muste be so closely receiued vnderneth, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the Woman. For to the nose shoulde the sauoure of nothing come, but only of such thinges, the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as *Asa fetida*, *Castorium*, mans hayre or womans hayre burnt, Pecockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneth, of the houe of an Asse, which thinges although they be of yll sauour, yet they be of such nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not onlye the secondine, but also dead byrthes to proceade and coime forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the Woman holde her breath inwarde so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downwarde suche thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese With the pouder of Elleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called *Vnguentum Basilicon* conueyed into the Matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, infude the oyle of Roses into the saime matrix. Item Rose Water tempered With a quantitie of the pouder of Holyoke, and dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the secondine do appeare, let the Mydwyfe receaue it tenderly, losyng it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubte that it Wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the whiche she hath handfast, to the Womans legge or fote, not very strayte lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Nowe yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quickly forwarde, then louse it a little and a little very tenderly, Wreathing it from one side to another, tyll such time

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that with the seconde birth ye remoue the Matrix also.

And yf in this meane whyle the woman fayut or sowne by reason of great payne ensuyng of the takyng away of this secondine, then muste ye minister such thinges to her the which comfort the head and the hart, as be electuaries which are confict with Muske, Ambre and the confection of precious stones, as *Diamargariton*, and suche other. Also suche thynges the whiche comfort the stomacke, as *Diagalanga*, *Diacinamonum*, and such lyke, whiche are alway in a redyneste at the Apothecaries, the whiche also she shall receiue with wine.

Item to remoue the secondine, and to expel it, take Rue, Horehound, Sothernwood, and Motherwort, of eche lyke quantitie, and then take so much of the oyle of Lylyes, as may be sufficient to steepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde

herbes

hearbes in, put all this together into a glased potte couered With suche a couer, that it haue a little hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it boyle a little Whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole Where the Woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the Whiche the one ende ye shall put into the vente or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receyue into her body, and so to syt closed rounde about With clothes, that no vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it hotte, and thus sytte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the secondine moue or begyn to proceade of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profyte not this Wayes, yet then laye this plaister on the bellye betwene the nauyll and the secretes, of the Whiche We shall speake hereafter

hereafter, the which is of such operation and efficacie, that it expelleth dead birthes. If for al this the secondin come not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no more medicines ne remedies to that purpose, but let it alone, for within few dayes it wyll putrifie and corrupt, and dissolue vnto a watery substance, thicke lyke brine or other fex mixed with water, and so issue forth. Howebeit, in the meane whyle it wyl put the woman to great paine in the head, in the hart, and in the stomacke, as we touched before.

¶ Howe that many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, and howe to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.

IT is also to be vnderstanded that many tymes after the deliueraunce, happeneth to women other the feuer or ague, or swellyng, or inflation of the body, other tumblyng in the belly, or els commotion or settelyng out of order of the Mother

ther or Matrix. Cause of the whiche thynges, is sometimes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and clensing of the flowres after the birth, or els contrary-wyse ouermuche flowyng of the same, which sore doth weaken the woman. Also the great labour and styrryng of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there muste be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumes, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of herbes seruyng to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other thinges, accordyng as the person or the peryll doth require, of the whiche thinges few or no women be ignorant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be agreable all suche simples . Whiche prouoke vrine, and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the bloud to passe

and

and sende the humours and matter downeward, as Motherwort, Asarum, Sauine, Peniriall, Parcely, Charuyll, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valeriam, Tyme, Cinamome, Spikenarde, and such other. All those thinges as they do prouoke and cause vrine, so do they also prouoke & cause the flowers to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these thynges without the counsayle of an experte Phisition, lest whylest ye helpe one place ye hurte another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath enclosyng the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte fyshes, or of the houe of a horse vnderneathe, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then being able to beare it, let her bloud in the vaine called *Saphina*, vnder the ancles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres chiefely of all other thynges.

Lykewyse do, yf the woman haue the

ague

ague after her labour, for that cõmeth of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke Water, in the Which is decocte Barley beaten, or Cicer and Barley together, or Water in Whiche be sodden *Tamarindi*, or Whay of milke, and let her eate a Cullis made of a Cocke, and sweete Pomegranates, for these thynges do prouoke the flowers, and mittigateth the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, lousyng and opening such thinges the Whiche before were constricte and cludered together.

For the ague in women with chylde.

? clustrid

If the body after labour do swell and inflate, then let her drynke water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuary called *Diaciminum*, or of the Trochiskes of Alkechengie, otherwyse called *Halicacabus*.

Also in this case a clyster made of such thynges the which do banquiche and expell ventosities and wyndenesse, as Annis seede, Fenell seede, Rue the herbe and the seede, Bay berryes,

Cum-

Cummin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part, of *Aristolochia Rotunda, Squinantum, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduaria.*

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettynge and knawynge of the guttes & payne of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapour and fume of suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Mallowes, Holyoke, Fenegreke, Comin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt the places with *Oleum sesaminum* (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And yf no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drinke Triacle or *Trifera magna*, with wyne in which is decoct Motherwort or Muggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Peniriall, *Policaria*, sixe leaues of baye tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneth closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, and temper them with the oyle of Penerial, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a whyle tyl it be somwhat soden together, and then take it of agayne, & put it into a little rounde linnen bag made for the purpose, the whiche with these herbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke much

much. iiii. handfulles, bray them together and seeth them with whyte wyne, and then put it in a rounde bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of muske with wyne.

Item, take whyte Onions and couer them vnder the hote ashes, the whiche when they be well rosted, beate them together with freshe Butter vnsalted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places, as before: in the meane whyle perfumyng the priuie partes with white Frankencence and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be vexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggewort, of eche two handfulles, of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, of Motherwort three handfulles, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe an ounce, decoct all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction beyng warme, dyp a spounge or other lynnen clothes, fomenting, sokyng, and strekyng the backe with the same, and so do often tymes, or els put all these foresayd herbes together sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyse to the backe.

Yf this profite not, take oyle Nardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to small pouder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,

of

of eche an ounce, Dyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of Ware two drams, disolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoint the backe.

What remedies when the flowres issue more aboundantly then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres yssue more vehemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great effeblyshyng of the woman, and inducing of much langour and paynefulnes, then first shall ye note wherevpon in commeth, for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redyly be recured, and causes of it be diuers, but moste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous bloud contayned in the whole body, or of much commixtion of the colericke humour and the bloud together, by the whiche the bloud is enfired and chaufed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroade the vaynes whiche descende to the Matrix.

Also the bloud beyng very thyn and waterish, for so it penetrateth, thrilleth, and yssueth forth the sooner. Also if the vaynes be very large, and receiue much

bloud,

bloud, for in that case they sende forth the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be vnmightie and weakened, the vaynes lykewyse weake and large, so that they cannot retayne nor withholde the bloud.

Also if the body of the woman, or the outward partes be very dense, close, and compact together, so that the outward poores be contract and shutte, in suche wise, that no vapours or swet can issue out at them, then this shal cause the yll humours (whiche otherwyse woulde passe through the poores in swet) to remayne within the bodye, and there to engender and encrease great flure and aboundaunce of matter, whiche proceedeth with the flowres and augmenteth the quantitie of them.

Also yf the vaynes of the Matrix be (by some chaunce) open and flow forth, as yf the Matrix be perysshed or otherwyse viciate. Or yf it chaunce that the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath ben thruste, or beaten, by all and any

of

of this meanes may come this inordi-
nate fluxe of flowres.

Good counsell to the woman.

Nowe seyng then that it ensueth by so manyfolde occasions and causes, it shalbe mete that women in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their minde vnto expert Phisitians, shewing them euery thyng in it, as they knowe wherevpon it shoulde come, so that the Phisition vnderstandyng the womans mynde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consider the true cause of it, and the very remedye to amende it. And many thinges there be whiche cease and restrayne this ouer muche flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Odours, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Dyntmentes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyll here set forth the most principall and best.

Fyrst then to stinte and restayne the outragious fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes straight and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyse men do

teache

vitis three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the rose Sugre, and let her receaue of it in the Mornyng and Euenyng, at eche tyme one dram, with. vi. sponefulles of Plantane water, or els the water of *Bursa pastoris*.

Item, take of the stone *Emathites*, and rub it on a Barbers Whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentymes, vntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornyng let the woman drynke. iii. iiii. or. v. sponefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of *Carabe*, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole armeniacke, which must be ministred a dram or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. v. sponefulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsayle of the Phisitions.

Nowe if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the prinie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensed, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of Night-

scrapyng of a goates horne, red Corall, *Terra sigillata*, whyte Frankensence, of eche (beyng well and finely beaten) two drams, of whyte waxe two ounces: al those tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and therwith annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernynge the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantaine the more and the lesse, the toppes of Wynes, freshe braunches of wylde Mulberies, or of the bramble, vnrype Damassons, Sloes or Bolasse, wylde Peares, Medlers or Mispylles, of eche three handfuls, of red rose leaues two handfulles, of Dasies, of all sortes of Thystles, of eche two handfuls, of Cinkfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcerfull, of Gaules, of Acornes pylled, of *Bursa pastoris*, of eche twoo handfulles, beate all these to pouder, cuttyng and brosynge that that wyll not be beaten to powder, and seeth them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water vp to the Nauyll, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drinke two drams of *Electuarium Athanasie*, or *Miclete*, with Plantayne water, or yf she be sore thursty, with red wyne.

And lykewyse ye maye geue to her of these electuaryes that folowe. Take good olde roose Suger two ounces, of red Coral, burnt Juery, Bole armeniacke, of eche two drams, of *Hemo-*

stites

vi. three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the rose Sugre, and let her receaue of it in the Mornyng and Euenyng, at eche tyme one dram, with. vi. sponefulles of Plantane water, or els the water of *Bursa pastoris*.

Item, take of the stone *Emathites*, and rub it on a Barbers Whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentymes, vntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery mornyng let the woman drynke. iii. iiii. or. v. sponefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of *Carabe*, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole armeniacke, which must be ministred a dram or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. v. sponefulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsayle of the Physitions.

Nowe if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensed, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of Night-

shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those things be tempered together, and the places annoynted therwith.

Item otherwyse. Take the whyte of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Purslane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place. These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the reste, howe to open, drye and clense such Apostumations, ye must consult with some Phisition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: Wherefore in this case it is the Mydwyfes parte, with her hande warmed and wet in whyte wine, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be swollē, then let

let her dissolue butter in Whyte wyne warmed, and therin dip woll, with the which wrappe the saine gutte a whyle, so doyng often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in againe. And ye may vse in the steade of whyte wine luke warme mylke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take waxe and melt it together with Masticke or whyte Frankensence, then spreade it vpon lynnen plaster wyse, and laye it ouer the place where it came foorth, byndyng it to, with a lynnen cloth or roller, for partyng of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupy waxe: then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spyke Nardy, & lay it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in which is decocte and soddeu such thinges which exicate, drye, and constrain or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuts, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, Franckensence, *Sanguis draconis*, and when it is well washed and soked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it againe

into his place.

Agayne, sometyme it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, & appeareth forth: Then let it be washed and soked with the water in which be sodden these thynges folowyng.

Take of Cipres nuttes, Spyke narde, *Balaustians*, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Wespylles, and vnrype wylde Peares, and vnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons or Bollasse, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdred, beate them to powder, and the rest deuide and cut them small, then seeth them altogether in rayne water, or els in water in the whiche steele, beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentymes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her vp to the Nauyll, or els dyp a sponge or a locke of wool in it, and therwith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes. Then euer with a fayre cleane lynnen cloth wype it cleane agayne, and strewe vppon it the powder folowyng, beaten very small, and searsed throughsyllie.

Take of Frankensence, *Carabe*, Galles, *Balaustions*, Cipres nuttes, Alome, *Antimony*, Bole Armeniacke, Mastycke, of eche lyke much, beate al these to very fine powder, & strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes binding it vp. And

yf

yf so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyll not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in whyte wyne, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometime it chaunceth that the womans Nauyl through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tente of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

Remedies for the womans Nauyl, when it openeth it selfe for paine in the labour.

Take whyte Frankensence, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid hony, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoyntyng also the tent, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Howe that somtime the priuie parte & fundement become one.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that through the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priuie parte and the fundement become one, by reasō of rupture and breaking of the same part in the delyueraunce of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

the same place is very narowe and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great grouth, so that it proceadeth with such violence, that it breaketh the waye be= fore it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and also re= duce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before, then heale this bracke & wouude by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threde, as Chi= rurgions do other Woundes, & yf that lyke ye not, then maye ye cure it other= wyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of lynnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the little clothes with some fast cleauing plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to sticke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one side of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betwene the peeces of lynnen in the mydes of them but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the lynnen toge= ther close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn, and when they be thus stytched together, lay a

little

little liquid pitche or tarre vpon the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the lynnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then maye ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dryed, and beate it to powder, also a little quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of aborcementes, or vntymely birthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it maye be defended, holpen, and eased.

Cap. vii.

Many causes of vntymely birthes.

ABorcement, or vntymelye birth, is When the Woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be rype (as in the .iii. iiii. or v. moneth) before the birth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers Wombe. Of the Whiche thynges there be many and diuers causes.

Fyrst, sometimes the mouth of the

Matrix

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conuenently close it selfe together, neither conteine the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected with vicious, slymye, fleumaticke, and other watersshe humours, that the cauitie or holowneſſe therof is thereby made so slipperye that the feature conceaued can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth foorth againe. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and sore, so that for payne it can not conteyne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotilidons, that is the vaines by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the which also the feature receiueth norysshment and foode, as is declared in the first Booke) be stopped with viscous & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont norysshment, perysheth and dyeth, & that most commonly in tye seconde or thirde moneth after

after conception. Wherfore Hipocrates saith: All such women whiche be impregnate or conceiued, being of a meane state in their body (that is to say, nether to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf it chaunce any suche to aborse in the seconde or thirde moneth (no other euident cause appearing) knowe ye for certaine, that it ensueth for because the Cotilidons be opplete, stopped, and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith that they breake, and so consequentlye the feature dyeth for faut of foode.

Abortment by reason of some griefe about the Matrix.

Item, abortement sometyme commeth by reason that some of the places about the Matrix be diseased and greeued, as yf *Intestinum rectum*, whiche is called the fundement gut, be vlcerate, hauyng the pyles or Hemorroides, or the visicke or bladder be swollen or encũbred with the stone, the strangury, or other euil. In these cases through the great labour & paine the whiche the partie hath in endeuoring & enforcing her self other her

to

to stoole, or to make water, be engendred great motions downeward, whereby many times the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborsement by Tenasmus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called *Tenasmus*, the which is when one hath euer great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, neuertheleſſe the parties greatly do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as *Hipocrates* saith, the pregnaunt woman which hath *Tenasmus*, for the moste parte abhorteth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborsement through the cough.

Item the cough, if it be greeuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Philition saith, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, euermore lyghtly do abortce, forbecause that all the meate and foode the which they receyue, turneth to foode, norysshment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, Wherefore necessaryly it dyeth.

Item

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderatly. And so saith *Hypocrates*, yf the woman yelde flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehementlỹ, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the third moneth, for it maye be well, that in the first and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet little foode and norysshment satisfyeth the conception, for the smalnesse therof.

Item, to be let bloud may be the cause of aborsement, Whiche must be vnderstande, in such as haue but little store of bloud: but such as haue great copie and plentie of bloud, may Without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let bloud, so that it be after the fourth monethe, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I Woulde that none shoulde be let bloud, except some great and wayghtie cause

dyd

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seuenth moneth. And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require, that she must needes receaue a purgation, let it be done betwene the fourth and the seuenth moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easy.

Also this maye come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blouddy or otherwyse, and speciallye yf the Woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and perysshed. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of aborsment, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng vpwardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the feature to perysshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sickenesse maye be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne

palsye, the fallyng sickenesse. &c. Also ouer much dronkennes, and excesse feedyng and surfettyng, by the which the byrth is suffocate and strangled in the belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of due digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any outwarde or inwarde cause, or yf the Secondine in the which the feature is conteyned, do breake before his tyme, and the humours and waters of the same flowe issue forth, causing the place to be slyppery, and so the birth to slide away vntymely: Or if the mother haue taken very great cold, or ouer great heat, whiche weakneth both mother and chylde.

And therefore ought women with chylde to exchewe much bathing or going to the hot houses in their teemyng, for that may do hurt three wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndeleth or enflameth the ayre or breath conteyned in the bodye, and so styfleth the chylde, & sometyme the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, & looseth

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the birth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the vtter heate of the bath, encreaseth the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the birth not beyng able to sustayne and abide the heate, naturally proceadeth for refrigeration and coolyng: but in the time or about the time of labour, she maye vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite delyueraunce.

Cause of aborcement by mutation of the weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutacion of the ayre and weather, maye be cause of aborcement. For (as *Hypocrates* writeth) whensoeuer the wynter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & drye, such women in that spring tyde may sone and of a light cause haue aborsment: Or yf they aborce not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne and the birth shalbe very weake & sickelye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For

For When that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste Weather heateth and moisteth the womans body, and by that the bodye is opened, vnlosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and vppon this when the springe tyde commeth, if it be colde and dry, finding the body open and vnlooſed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the soner and the more vehemently, and the byrth feelyng the sodaine colde and chaunge of Weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered, or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, abortement may happen by ouer muche styrryng of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust against some Wall, or beating, or by some sodain anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moste com-

monly maye ensue aborcement or vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubt is much more griefe and payne to the woman, then the very naturall labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man or woman contrary to nature, or before nature doth require it, is farre greater griefe, then the same happenyng and commyng in his due season.

* Signes whereby ye may foresee aborcement.

Tokens to foresee aborcement.

When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to go before. First her brestes which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer for the most part aborcement followeth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, whiche before was in good lykyng, the other remaynyng sounde and safe, then loke of what side the breste is of, and the chylde of that syde is in peryll. Wherefore Hipocrates writeth, yf the ryght breast slake or flagge, the masculine or male

male byrth is in peryll, if the left, the female byrth, because that for the moste part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other femenine, the man lieth in the right syde, and the woman in the left most commonly.

Also another signe of abortement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that she begin to ware red in the face, and all partes of the body to shake and tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palsey in the head. Item when she feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braynes, the rest of the body taken as it were with a werynes without any outward apparent cause, why these thinges portende and signifie abortement to be at hande, specially if at the same time the flowres issue also.

Item, yf the womans body do swell and inflate with a certayne hardenesse or styfenesse, and that she feele stitches, and as it were ventositie or wynde, runnyng from one syde of the bodye

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstandyng, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the saime inflation do persist and continue any whyle, the woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquisshe ventositie and wyndynesse, this thynge I saye doth betoken peryll of abortement through ventositie and inflation, and that chiefely about the thirde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouyded and foreseene the abortement before it come. Nowe wyll I shewe you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies whereby to auoyde abortement.

The chiefe remedy to auoyde abortement is, to shun all such thinges which may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of already, but yf ye feare abortement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges, whose operation is to contrahe, constrayne and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Dyntmentes, Plasters, Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thinges the whiche represse and stynte the flowers flowyng ouer muche after the birth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slippery, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfylled With viscous humours, and With inflations or ventolities, then may ye defend it by vsyng of such thynges Whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to represse ventolities, Whereof also We haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert Phisition of your counsayle, yf ye may haue such one, for because that many such thinges come, and not all by one Way or meane.

And yf ye doubte peryll forbecause

that the matrix or other places about be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate, or hauyng the stone or strangury, and suche other thynges, then aske and vse the aduice of some well learned medicine, and he shall shewe you howe all thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement because the partie is very weake and low brought, then let her feede on such thinges the whiche moysten and nourysshe wel, or fatten the body, as Capons flesh, Kyd, Lambe, yongue Veale, Partrige and such other.

Agayne, if the woman be taken with any sharpe and fell disease, then let her be cured of the same as shortlye as can be, with such thinges the which appertayne to the curyng of such disease, or if she haue sustayned any long famine or hunger, then let her be fedde with good meates and drinkes moderately taken, and yf she haue surfetted by ouermuch eatynge and drynkynge (as nowe a dayes most commonly people do) then let

let her abstayne for a time, and if it may be conuenientlye done, let her receyue some easy and gentle medicine, Whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfettyng burthen, especially by vomittyng, for the Whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of Water luke warme, Wherin hath ben sodden two sponefuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, With her fynger or With a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in bloudde, then shall it be very good a litle to let her bloud, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, Whiche thorowe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangeled, of the Whiche thyng also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare abortsement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the fluxe, or of the disease called *Tenasmus*, or of ouermuche issuyng

of bloud, Whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduice of a Phisition for remedie, if for the fragilitie, tenderneſſe, and bracke of the ſecondine, ſhe feare this aborcement, for because that in this caſe the ſecondine ſhall not be able to holde and contayne the birth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that ſhe hurt not her ſelfe by ouer much mouyng or ſtirryng, as by labouryng, daunſyng, runnyng, ſtandyng, faſte goyng, or carryyng of ponderous and wayghtie thynges, or lyftyng of the ſame. And to be ſhort, let her With all waryneſſe take heede and be diligent that ſhe exchewe and abſtayne from all ſuch thynges the whiche myght cauſe and induce aborcement.

* Of dead byrthes, and by what ſignes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may alſo be erpelled. Cap. ix.

IT shalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the child be dead in the mothers wombe.

* Signes then that the birth is dead in the Mothers wombe, be these.

i. Fyrst, yf the mothers brestes do sodenly slake, as I touched before.

ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styrre.

iii. If when the Mother turneth her from the one side to the other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone or a dead Wayght.

iiii. If her belly and Nauyll begyn to waxe colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.

v. If any stynkyng and fylthy humours flowe from the Matrix, and chiefely after some fell disease.

vi. If the womans eyes waxe holow & that her colour chaunge from whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose waxe astonyed, and

haue

haue not their right vse, and her lippes Waxe Wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about the secrete partes she feele great throng & payne, the colour of her face chaunge-yng into Worse and Worse, otherwyse then it Was Wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche thynges Which be agaynst nature, and not Wont to be eaten or dronken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed With vayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye With the strangurye, or that she enforce her selfe muche to the stoole, & With all her power, and yet can not do any thyng.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the Whiche thyng lyghtly happeneth two or three dayes after the byrth be dead.

xii. If her handes put into very warme Water, and then layde on the Womans belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowe, the more that come together of them at one

tyme

tyme and in one person, the surer may ye be that the birth is dead, the Whiche beyng once dead, all diligence must be hadde that it may be expelled out of the Womans body.

But here must ye see againe whether it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe saued or no, for sometyme it chaunceth that the Mother dyeth withall, and sometymes the Mother doth well and prospereth.

To knowe whether the mother shall be in peryll or no.

Whether the Mother shalbe in peryl withall, or no, by these thynges shall ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the labour sowne or feare, as though she were in a traunce: if her remembraunce fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant able to moue or stirre her selfe, yf she (called with a loude voyce) can aunswere nothyng at all, or els very littl, and that very softly, as though her voyce began to fayle her: if she be inuaded or taken among in the labouryng with convulsion or shrynkelyng together: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

yf

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes when ye see in the woman labo-ryng, it is an euident token that she shal not lyue long after her delyueraunce, Wherefore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but if none of these signes do appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do well, the byrth beyng once departed: Where-fore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be delyue-red of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsyue, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two menes to expel dead byrthes.

Fyrst without instrumentes, with this fu-migation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Asse, and put it on coles, and let the woman receyue the fume vnderneath.

¶ Another.

Take the skynne of an Adder, Myrre, *Castorium*, Brymstone, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponacum*, Madder that the Dyers occupie, Pygeons dongue, or Hawkes dongue, beate al these to powder, & temper them with Oxe gal, & make pylles of it, eche the quan-titie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after

another

another in the coales, and receyue the fume thorowe a pipe or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another, take Encense, *Oppoponacum*, *Galbanum*, Brimstone, of eche lyke much, beate them together, and temper them with Oxe gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations, as before.

A potion for the same purpose, take *Asa fetida*, halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of myrre two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with whyte wine, or with water in the whiche Sauine is sodden.

Another, take Figges, Fenegreke, Organnie, and seeth them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drinke, for this drinke wyll engender lubricitie and slippernes in the nether partes, and vse also some of those thinges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certaine pessaries or suppositaries concernyng the same, take Gumme, Ammoniacke, *Oppoponacum*, *Heliborus niger*, Staphisagre, *Aristolochia longa*, and *Colocinthis* without his kernelles, beate all these thynges together, temperyng them with Oxe gall, and also with the iuyce of fresche Rue, then make a pessary of wollen, & annoynt and wette the pessarie with the same, conuayeing it into the secrete places.

Item another, make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thicknes of a finger, and dippe it

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolued a quantitie of Scammonie, and do with that pessarie, as before.

Item, take *Aristolochia rotunda*, Sauine, Garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Ore gall, with this annoint a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

womans milk

Item, yf the woman drinke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same herbe two drams, and geue the same to drinke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without any perill of the Mother.

Cinamome

Item, take of Myrrhe foure drammes, of Cinamome, *Galbanum*, *Castorium*, of eche two drams, of *Oppoponacum*, one dramme, all those beaten and tempered together with Ore gall, make pylles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the nether partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of bloud is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood, Muggewort, of eche a handfull, of *Asphaltum* halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehound, Fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seeth all these thynges together in

rayne

rayne water, in the which let the woman bathe her selfe, then take of Hense grease and Duches grease, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Dill seede, with this oyntment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bathe, then take Date stones and beate them to powder a dram and an halfe, with a scruple of Safran tempered together with whyte wyne, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take *Oppoponacum*, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a fynger, conuey it into the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of *Galbanum* a dramme or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the *Galbanum* beyng dissolued, geue it to the woman to drinke.

Item, a paster for the same. Take *Galbanum*, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwort, and of this make a plaster by putting to of waxe a certayne quantitie, then take a linnen cloth of such length and bredth, that it may couer all the belly vnder the Nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this cloth spread this plaster of the thicknes of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called *Diatessarum*, and geue of it to the woman for to drink, and it wyll expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then must

muste be vsed moze seuere and harde remedies, with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such other thynges made foz the nonce. And fyll the woman muste be layde a long vpright, the middle part of her body lying hier then all the rest, companyed of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she rise not withall. Then let the Mydwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, oz other that may make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers shitting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix to feele and perceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hookes and such other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

Yf it be so that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, oz the roofe of the mouth, oz vnder the chin, on one of the shoulders, whiche of these partes shall seeme moste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderly foz hurtyng of the woman.

But if it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, oz by some ribbe, oz some of the backe bones, oz of the brest bones, and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Midwife may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte

hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her draw both together, so that the byrth may proceade and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyl ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the commyng forth with the forefynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to sticke or to be lette any where: and as it commeth foorth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conuenyently be reduced and returned vpwarde agayne, by reason of the narownesse of the place, then bynde it with a lynnen cloth that it slyp not vp agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyll such tyme that the hole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body: and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrste at once, or one legge or both, yf they cannot be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conuenientlye. As ye cut the armes from the shoulders, so lykewyse cuttynge the legges from the thyghes, for the which purpose the Chirurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges and armes may sone be cut frō the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cut from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easelye proceade, with as lyttle payne to the mother as

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swellyng, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conueniently issue out that narow places: Then let the Mydwyfe with a sharpe penknyfe cut open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne foorth, and so the head to ware lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by any suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onelye of a naturall growth, then mulle the head be broken in pieces, and the partes euermore taken foorth with such instrumentes, as the Chirurgions haue readye and necessarye for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come foorth, yet the brest part woulde not folow for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lykewyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lykewyse yf all the reste of the body should be so swollen that it woulde not proceade ne come foorth, then must it lykewyse be broken in peeces, and so had foorth.

Farthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be exulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage bee made the narower by that meanes, the dryer and the more contract: then must ye fyrst study and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greses, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

Also yf the dead byzth come sydelonge, then muste ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to such fashion, that it may most easely be bzought foozth. The Matrix and other secretes must be annoynted, perfumed, and bapoured with such thinges the which may make it moze ample and large. If it can not be thus had fozth whole, then let it be cut out by peece mele, as is befoze spoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowzes issue ouer behemently, then vse such thynges as haue vertue to restrayne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the.vi. Chapter befoze.

But contrary to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then shal it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and also the nether places, so that the chylde may by that meanes both receaue and also expell ayze and breath, which otherwyse myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the lefte syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chylde. They that be bozne after this fashion are called Cesares, foz because they be cut out of theyz mothers belly: Wherupon also the noble Romayne Cesar the fyzste toke his name.

The second Booke.

¶ In the last Chapter of this booke be briefly recited certayne experte medicines which be most requisite to the chiefe purpose entended in this presente booke. Chap. r.

FOrsomuch as the pryncipall entent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines, whereby the womans labour may be made the more easy: Therfore here I wyll compendeously set foorth certayne medicines, oyntmentes and emplasters, such as shalbe sufficient and moste requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath ben well experimented and practysed: The which also it shalbe conuenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a readynesse agaynste theyr tyme of neede. For although that nature be the chiefe and headde doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception, bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstandyng, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie nature, beyng somtyme impedite and let, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and yet the byrth do not proceade: then for the more expedite and quicke delyueraunce, geue her of this medicine folowyng.

℞ Take of the finest Cinamome that may be chosen

chosen.iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beat it to very fine pouder.

Item of Saffron dried by the fyre tyll it be blackysshe, of *Cassia lignea*, fine Reubarbe, Sauine dryed, Myrrhe, of eche of these seuen scruples, of pure muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdred, and then perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. or .vii. droppes of Malueseye, temper the hole mase into lyttle roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dram. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardly the wayght of .vi.d. of these trochiskes beaten into fine powder, with foure spoonefulles of Isope water, and other foure of good wine secke.

This medicine is not onelye profitable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notablye good to expell the after byrth, or any other suche lyke matter in that place, hauynge neede of expulsion.

Item, yf nede do so require, it shalbe verye expedient to haue this emplaster folowyng, in a redynesse, the whiche sped abroade vpon a lynnen cloth, either els vpon lether, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner as maye be, dilateth and openeth the poores of that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth & dissolueth them, whereby that that is contayned in the bellye fyndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greuaunce of the mother.

Take of *Emplastrum de Melliloto*, of *Diachilon*, of *Oxycroceū*,

of eche twoo ounces, of the rootes of *Aſarum*, of wylde Neppe dryed, the leaues of *Benioyne*, of tosted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good *Caſtorium*, iii. dragmes, of the oyle of Dyll one or twoo ſponefulles: ſuch of theſe as are to be poudred, beate them fyne, and then ouer a ſoft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the ſame emplaſter may ſerue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the belly and the priuie paſſage, to prouoke and drawe foorth the latter or hynder byrth yf nede be: But yf that be not ſtrong enough, then laye to this plaſter folowing, which is of much more efficacie, force, and ſtrength.

℞ Take of *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Serapinum*, Myrrhe, of eche an ounce, of *Colloquintida*, *Heleborus niger*, of eche two drams, of *Caſtorium*, *Perethrum* and *Storax liquida*, of eche three drams, of Turpintine and *Petroleum*, of eche foure drams. Fyrſt ouer a ſofte fyre temper the Turpintine, *Petroleum*, and *Storax liquida*, together, then thereto adde *Colloquintida*, *Heleborus*, *Caſtorium* and *Pirethrum*, beyng fyrſt well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the *Galbanum*, *Ammoneacum*, *Serapinum* and Myrre, beyng fyrſt diſſolued in good Malueſey, and ſo take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaſter is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item vnſet Leekes ſtamped and fryed with butter, and ſo layde plaſterwyſe to the belly ſerueth well for the ſame.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Mary goldes dronke with white wyne, expelle the afterbirth.

Alſo

Also the sayde leaues and flowres dryed, and at tyme of nede, kyndeled with a waxe candle, and the fume therof receaued vnderneath into the priuie part, prouoketh out meruelously the after byrth.

¶ Item a comfortable pocion, to be taken after the deliueraunce of the chylde.

Take of the swetest garden Wyntes, grene or drye, of the leaues of Bawme grene also or drye, of the leaues of *Maioram*, the rootes of Fenell the pyth take out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemary, of Buds, of Borage, and of dryed red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Mase brosed a lyttle, the weyght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of.vi.grotes, knyt al these together in a cloute or lyttle lynnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quarte of Borage water the space of a daye and a nyght: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wyne Secke, or els Muscadel: and beyng myxt togeather, put thereto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberics, conserue of Borage flowers, conserue of Rosemary flowres, and dryncke hereof euerye daye the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure sponefulles of the water, and other foure of the forsayde wyne. And this potion shall both comfort the woman, and also helpe greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common vsage to geue often to womẽ in theyr chyld bed cawdels of Otemeele, thynkyng and saying therby the woman to be scoured: whereas in deede the sayde Otemele is a notabe bynder and dryer. Therfore ye shall vnderstand, that the ryght vse therof is, to geue it to suche as haue alreadye ben well and sufficiently scoured and clensed from their after birth, and other thynges to be loked for in this tyme and case: but yf the woman be not sufficiently purged already, then geue her no Otemele cawdels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, prayng the women readers hereof, to accept and suffise themselues with these fewe medicines here in this Chapter mencioned, and often by me and other practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the soner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refreshe and furnyshe the same with newe and much more excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or sene in any booke, concernyng such matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiskes and emplasters described here in this place, ye shall fynde them alwayes ready made in Bouckslers bery in London.

In this first Chapter of the thyrd Booke is fyrst declared the matters therin conteyned, and then howe the Infant newely borne must be handeled, nourysshed and loked to. Chap.i.

IN the second booke we haue sufficientlye and at length declared the maners, fashions and diuersities of birthes, With the daũgers and perylles often chaunsing to the women at theyr labours, and after the same. And nowe here in this thyrd booke shalbe entreated What is to be done to the infant borne. And how to chose a Nurse, & of her office. With manyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst sundry infirmities, Whiche eftsones happen to Infantes in theyr infansye.

What is to be done when the chylde is borne.

Then after that the Infant is once come to lyght, by and by the Nauyll muste be cut three fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knyt vp, and let be strued on the head of that that remayneth, of the powder of Bole armeniacke, and *Sanguis draconis, Sarcocola,* Myrrhe, and Cummin, of eche lyke muche beaten to pouder, then vpon that

that bynd a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Oliue that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to knyt the Nauyll, and after to cut it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of what length the reste of the Nauyll is left, of the same length shal the chyldes tonge be, if it be a man child. Itē *Auicenna* saith, that diuers things may be knowen by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll: For (as he sayth) when the woman is deliuered of her first chyld, then beholde the Nauyl of the chyld: which if in that part of it, which is next vnto the body it haue neuer a Wrincle, it portendeth and doeth signifie perpetuall from thencefoorth sterilitie or barennes. And yf it haue any Wrinkles in it: then so manye Wrinkles, so many children shal the woman haue in time to come. Also some add to this & say, that if there be lyttle space betwene these Wrinkles in the nauil, thē shal ther be also little space betwene the bearyng of the children: if much, it signifieth long tyme betwene the bearyng of them: but these sayinges be nether in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Nowe

Nowe to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knyt vp: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of Acorns, for that is singulerly good to confirme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, which maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infant be greued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verye tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your fynger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nosethyrilles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nourse handle so the childes sittyng place, that it may be prouoked to pourge the belye. And chiefely it must be defended from ouer much colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonlye chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth daye) then on the reste remaynyng, strewe the powder or Ashes of a Calfes houe burnte, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wyne.

Farthermore, when the Infante is swaddeled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and hede that she bynd euery parte ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tenderneſſe and gentle entreatynge, and not crokedly and confuselye, the whiche also

also must be done oftentymes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in younge and tender ympes, plantes and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they euermore remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, if it be bound and swadled, the members lyinge ryght and straycght, then shall it growe straycght and vpryght. If it be crokedly handeled, it wyll growe lykewyse. And to the yl negligence of many Nourses may be imputed the crokednesse and deformitie of many a man and woman, which otherwyse myght seme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only negligence of Nourses many chylde groweth crokebacked & wrye legged.

Item let the chyldes eyes be oftentymes wyped and clensed with a fine and cleane lynnen cloth, or with silke. And let the armes of the Infant be verye straycght layde downe by the sydes, that they maye growe ryght, and sometyme strokyng the belly of the chylde before the vesicke or bladder, to helpe to ease and to prouoke the chylde to the makyng of water, and when ye lay it in the Cradell to slepe, sette the Cradell in such a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther of the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head euer somwhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed twoo or three tymes in the day, & that anon after slepe, in the Winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warm water, nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto such tyme as the bodye begyn

to

to warred for heate, but take hede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearyng another day.

Then to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dryed with gentle and soft lynnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe vpwarde, the whiche with her hands let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it vp, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nosethrylles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

¶ Of the Nurse and her mylke: and howe longe the chylde shoulde sucke. Chap.ii.

The mothers mylke best and most familier to the chylde.

Concernyng the bringyng vp, nourysh-mente, and geuyng of sucke to the chylde, it shalbe beste that the mother geue her chyld sucke her selfe, for the mothers milke is more conuenyent and agreable to the Infant, then any other womans, and more doth it nourysshe it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therfore also it doth more desyrously couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquainted. And to be short, the mothers mylke is moste holsommest for the chylde.

chylde, as *Auicenna* wryteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloying of it, and least also it loth it: but rather let it haue often of it and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes and ouermuch at once. For suche as bee ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr bodye to swell and inflate, and in theyr urine shall it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: whiche thynge yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued already be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or colerike, let her neuer geue the chyld her brest fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sickneſſe, or that her brestes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then lette her chose a holsome Nurse, with these condicions folowyng.

To chose a good Nurse.

Fyrste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good largeneſſe. Secondly, that it be not to sone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaſte, and that (yf it may be) such one which had a man chyld. Thyrdly, that she be of meane and measurable lykyng, neyther to fat ne to leane. Fourthly, that she be good and honeſt of conuersation, neyther ouer hasty or yrefull, ne to sadde or solome

lome, neyther to fearefull or timorous: for thefe affections and qualities bee pernycious and hurtfull to the mylke, corrupting it, and paſſe foorth through the mylke into the chylde, makynge the chylde of lyke condicion and maners. Alſo that they be not ouerlight and wanton of behauiour. Fyfthly, that her breſtes be full, and haue ſufficicent plenty of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, ſofte, hangyng, and flaggyng, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a meaſurable quantitie.

The conſideration of the Nurſes mylke.

Alſo loke vppon her mylke, that it be not blackyſhe, blewyſhe, grey, or reddyſhe, neyther ſower, ſharpe, ſaltyſhe, or brackyſhe, neyther thyn and fluy, neyther ouer groſſe and thycke, but temperately whyte and pleſaunt in taſte.

And to be ſhort, that mylke is beſt and moſte to be choſen, of the which a drop beyng mylked ſoftly vpon the nayle of the thombe, holdynge your fynger ſtyll it rolleth not of, neyther flytteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lyttle, it wyll flyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it ſpreade abrode, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue ſtyl when that ye moue a lyttle your hande, then is it to ſpyſſe and thyck. The meane betwene both is beſt.

If it be ſo that the Nurſes mylke be to hot, charpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde ſucke, her ſelfe beyng faſtyng.

Sometyme it chaunſeth that the mothers or Nurſes mylke doeth fayle or decreaſe, the which

Dyuers causes of the defect or failing of mylke.

which thyng may come by dyuers causes: as by sickenesse, by disease in the brestes, or by takyng of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder the mylke, or for because she lacketh such thynges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouermuch fastyng, hunger & thurst, the which causes muste be well conydered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedye.

Thynges which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Lette her vse to eate Parsnyp, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of Fenyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or *Cicercula*, let her eate of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eat sheepes brestes and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolue it in warme whyte wyne, the whiche let the Nurse drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the brestes doth well, without scarification.

Item a plaster for the same of Frankensence, Masticke, and Pitche, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the skynne fyrste bryng annoynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe verye good to rubbe softely with the hande the brestes, or els in bathynge after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her breste.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of violettes, and myngle with it Musk, Ensence, and

and *Laudanum*, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of woll, and clap it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the which is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and *Xiloaloes*. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, and *Cardamomum*, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate fresshe Chese and myke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tẽpered with Wilke & Suger, puttynge to it also a quantitie of Fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of *Siler montanum*, of eche three drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, and asmuch of Suger, geue her this to drynke about ten dayes, at mornyng, euenynge, and mydday.

Item take of Fenell seede, or the leaues, and of Horehounde, of eche two handfuls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Safron beaten one scruple, also of fresshe Butter thre ounces, and seeth all these in sufficient water, makynge hereof a plaster, and the same plaster whilest it is hoate, lay it to the Nurses brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony thre ounces, seeth it in fiue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the third part, and

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentymes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes wel washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye fixe ounces: of these mingled and tempered together, make an electuary, of the whiche let her take both in the morning and euening, at eche time a sponefull.

Item take two drams of Cristall beaten into fyne pouder, and deuyde that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annis and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, *Cardamomum*, freshe Chese, Wortes made of olde Chese, Cicer, Cristall beaten to pouder and taken with Hony, Lettuse, Fenel, Wine in which Rosemary or Sauery be sodden.

Companying with men corrupteth the Nurses milke

Item to abstayne from venery or mans company, for if she vse that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vnsauery and vnholsome, neyther can the chylde well broke it, but most commonly shall cast it vp agayne, because it cannot digest it.

Also it shalbe best that the chylde sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day or two, for because that the creme (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the first day

in

in all women doth thycken and congile.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer sore laxed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that she take anye medicines to remedye it: then let another geue the chylde sucke whylest she bee recouered agayne. And when the chyld is layde in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste through ouer much rockyng and styrrynge, the chyldes stomacke turne, and the Wylke there corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseth to geue the chylde sucke two yeares: howe be it amonge vs moste commonly, they sucke but one yeare. And when ye wyll weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a little and lyttle, and to make for it lyttle pylles of bread and Suger to eate, and accustome it so, tyll it be able to eate all maner of meate: and this shall suffyse for the education and bryngynge vp of infantes at this tyme. Notwithstandynge dyuers other thynges here are lefte vnspoken of, another tyme God wyllynge we shall declare them at large.

Howe long the chylde should sucke.

¶ Of dyuers diseases and infirmities which chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the remedies therefore. Cap. iii.

ALthough there be in maner infinite diseases Which happen the Infantes, as wryteth *Hypocrates*, *Galenus*,

Many diseases of Infantes.

Rasis, *Auicenna*, and diuers other: yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here only suche of them whiche moste commonly happen to the same, & that be these: exulceration of the gummes, flixe of the belly, or ouermuch loosenes of the same, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and distillation of the head, shorte wyndes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clyppyng of the mouth, apostume in the eares, apostume in the brayne, swellyng and bolnyng of the eyes, skumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, knawyng in the belye, the body swellyng and pufted vp, often sneesyng, wheales or bladders of the body, swellyng of the coddes, swelling of the Nauyl, vnslepynesse, yexing, appetite to parbreake, fearefulnesse in the dreames, the mother, issuyng out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the belly, chaufyng, the fallyng sickenesse, the consumption, the palsye, trembling of the partes of the body, the stone, goggle eyes.

Howe

* Howe to cure and to remedy all these, nowe wyll I shewe in order.

FIrst in exulceration of the gummes, are wont certayne pulshes and as it were wheales, to growe on the gummes, or in the corners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to much greeuaunce, and to remedye this, it shalbe good that ye with your finger, rubbe the infantes gummes and the pulshes or whelkes withall, and then to annoynt the same gummes with oyntment made of Hens grese, Hares or Conyes brayne, oyle of Camomell mixt with Hony, then take water, and in it seeth Camomell and Dyll, the whiche water beyng hoate, powre it on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote aboue the head. Of exulceration of the gummes.

¶ Of the flixe and ouermuch loosenes of the belly.

IOr this take the seede of Roses, Comin, Annyse, and the seede of Smallage, beate all these together and make them plasterwyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly. For the flix in children.

And farther, if that it whiche the infant voydeth be of redde or yelowe colour, then geue it to drinke of the sirope of Roses, or of Crabbes, other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a little Wynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it, then temper it together with the youlke of a

rosted egge, and geue that to the childe to eate, or els take of the same seede brused fyrst, and then seeth it in fayre running water, thereof let the chylde drinke two or three tymes the day.

Item, take a gall, and beate it to pouder, then seeth it in water, with this water, temper Barlye meale, or the meale of *Mellium*, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes belly.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chylde, be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegges the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the whiche temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chylde to drinke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantayne, and a little Vineger, and make it plasterwyse, and laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of *Centinodium*, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dryed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Bole armeniake, *Sanguis Draconis*, and the rindes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce

of

of Plantane the moze and the lesse, and in this put clay of an olde furnise oz Ouen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

¶ To vnloose the chylde beyng bounde.

If the chylde be so bounde, that it can not long time haue any stoole, then make a suppositarie of Hony sodden till it be hard and massye, and let the suppositary be of the length of your lyttle finger, and the bignesse of two wheate strawes bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chyldes foundement.

Item, lykewyse ye may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beates, oz els of the roote called Orelle oz Flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conuayed into the sitting place of the chylde.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony, as a pease to drinke, and to rubbe the belly a little, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, oz dipped in Bulles gall, and layde to the Nauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chylde sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chylde.

Item, take of small Mallowes, of great Mallowes of eche an handful, of Fenegreke & Linesede of ech an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. seeth all these together in water, and then stampe them in a morter, and

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grese of eche two ounces, and of Safran one scruple, and make a paster of it vppon a linnen cloth, of the thicknes of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

Yf this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes, Cicotrine one dram, of *Heleborus* both *nigr* and *albus*, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder, then temper them with three sponefuls of the iuyce of Walwort, or of Ore gall, in this licour dippe woll, and laye it to the Nauell the bredth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Walwort and of Mill meale, & seeth those together, tyll they be thicke, then make a plaster therof, and lay it to the belly beneth the Nauell.

¶ Remedy for the crampe or dissention of the members.

If it chaunce that the infant be taken with the disease called the crampe, the which for the most part commeth of indigestion, and of the weakenes of the powre attractiue, and specially in such chyldren the which be very fat and moyste, then shall ye annoynt all along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blewe Flowredeluce, or els white Lillies, eyther the oyle of Rue.

Yf the crampe take the childe whylest it stretcheth forth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or yayning) then let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the whiche prime Roses, Cousslappes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of sweete Almons tempered together, and if the chylde be in great heate, annoynt him with the oyle of Violettes, or with oyle Olife, tempered with a little whyte waxe, and also powre on the childes head the oyle of violettes.

✻ Remedy for the coughe and distillation, or Catarrhes of the head.

SOmetymes the chylde is sore encombred with the coughe, & with distillation or running of humours out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, and the brest, the which ye shal remedy thus.

First powre warme water on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the chyldes head, and so do continually the space of halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a little Honye on the chyldes tonge to chawe vppon, then put your fynger into the chyldes mouth, and depresse or holde downe the innermoste part or the roote of the tongue next to the throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomyte, and to voyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dragagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Lycorise, and Suger penedium, all this beaten together,

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Wylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanched, and only the iuyce or water of Fenell, whereof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drinke mornyng and euenyng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue, and the roofe of the mouth, then take of the seedes of Quinces two sponefulles, bruse them a little, and stype them in warme water the space of two or three houres, then strayne the viscouse & grosse water from them through a strayner, and that remayneth, frye it together in a frying panne with Suger, *Penidium*, and the oyle of sweete Almons, thereof makyng an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receyue, yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuary, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item, agaynst the cough and ouer muche heate, take the seede of whyte Popie and Dragagant of eche two drams, of the seedes of Gowardes foure drams, and beate all these together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the childe, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take Reasons, and doyng away the graynes of it, seeth them together with water in a frying panne, so that they burne not to the bottome of the panne, then take it from the fyre

and

and beate it well in a morter, temperyng therwithall Suger, *Penidium*, and geue of this in the mornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a little Myrrhe beaten to power, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde all suche thinges, the which may engender cough, as Vineger, ouermuche salted meates, Chese, Nuts, & all sharpe thynges. Also she must annoint the chyldes brest with Butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a morter, and to that adde as muche of Suger *Penidium*, with a little oyle of Violettes, and make an electuary of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hasell Nut.

¶ Remedy for short wynde.

Many tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brethyng or short windnes, the which to remedy, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the childe with Hony, but if the disease encrease on the childe, and that the winde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and al the places about the eares with oyle Olyfe, and also the tongue for to prouoke vomite, and then powre a little warme water into the chyldes mouth to washe it withall, & geue to it a little Lineseede tempered with Honye and beaten, made after

the

the fashion of an electuary.

Item, yf the chylde haue belydes this also the fix, then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtyls, other els Dates sodden with Wylke and flowre.

* Against weales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the chyldren wheales and blisters on their tongues and mouth, whiche thynges commeth of the sharpenesse and eagernesse of the Nurses mylke, the mouth and tongne of the infant beyng so tender that the least thyng that toucheth it, shal offende it, wherfore besides that, it is great payne to the chyld, thus to be blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it is also very perillous and daungerous, for such wheales which be not ripe and seeme blacke, betoken death, whiche yf they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take Violettes and Roses, and seeth them in a little Rose water, and therwith washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the ioyce of

Petie

Petie mozell, & the iuyce of Purselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therwith the whelkes. And yf the forsayde blisters or whelkes bee blackish: then adde to the forsayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrrhe, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them well together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynte the chyldes tounge there with.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other elles of vnripe grapes, whiche is called Vergeus, and with that annoynte the tounge.

Item, it is very good to washe the tounge with red wyne, and then to strewe vpon it the pouder of Galles, or els of the barke or ryne of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniake, Plidium, and Sumach, of eche three drams: also of Galles two drams, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse them through a searser, and strewe that powder on the blisters.

Item if these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse such thynges which are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the which lay on the Infantes mouth and tounge.

Itē Amilum or starch tempered together with

Rose

Rose water, & put on the chylds tong, is good.

Item, take the iuyse of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chyldes tounge in like maner, but yf the wheales or blisters be somewhat yelowyche, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselayne. But yf the wheales seme whytische, then take of Myrrhe and of Saffran, of eche one dram, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to pouder & lay of it on the wheales and tounge.

¶ Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynynge of the mouth.

SOmetymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nurses pappes, the chyldes lyppes and mouth be exulcerat, hauyng in maner of clefles and chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed wooll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hennes grease, euery of them beynge warme, and with this annoynt the mouty and lyppes of the chylde.

¶ Of appostumation and runnyng of the eares.

WHEN that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properlye commeth of aboundant humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the head: then take a peece of wooll, and dyp it in Hony mixte with redde wyne, to the whiche is put also a little

quantitie

quantitie of Alome beaten to pouder, or of Safran, then make of the same as it were a tent, and put it in the chyldes eare, & when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynes of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that the whiche commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, and temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the pouder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger and do lykewyse.

But yf the chylde haue great payne and dolour by wyndnes, ventolitie, and the humours in this place: then seeth Organny and Myrrhe with oyle Olyfe, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

¶ Of apostumation in the head.

IF there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many tymes chaunseth) the whiche causeth the chekes and eies to be greatly payned, and the eye syght to ware wannyche or tawnye, then must be applyed such thynges which maye refrigerate and coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, and the iuyce of Nyghtshade, iuyce of Purselayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peeee of wooll and lay it to the head, and as often as it wareth drye dyp it agayne.

Of

¶ Of the swellyng or bolnyng of the eyes.

AGaynst swellyng and bolnyng of the eyes, take *Licium*, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynd it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth, then afterward washe the eyes with water in whiche Camomell and Basill haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swellyng the eyes be not redde, nether the browes swollen: then take Myrrhe, Aloes, Safron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper all these, and stipe them in olde wine, & binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, & into the childes nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolued in womans Mylke.

¶ Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.

AGaynst the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste part happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and weppynge, take the iuyce of *Solatrum*, and droppe of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes waxe reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

¶ Agaynst immoderate heate, or the feuer.

IF the infante bee in great and vehemente heate contrary to nature, the which is called a feuer: Fyrste it shalbe the Nurses parte to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moysten.

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thinges folowyng. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Suger, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweting.

Item, take of the iuyce of Wormewood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seeth them a little on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the thyldes breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and mixte them together with this oyntment beyng colde, annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wrystes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dryed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make therof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes brest somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chylde is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges, whiche coole: As Letuce, Purslayne, Endiue, Plantayne, and such other.

¶ Against fretting or gnawyng in the belly.

If the chylde be vexed with fretting and knawing in the belly, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate crying of the chylde, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great crying, then shall you take

warme water, wherein hath ben sodden Lauender, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of Dill, and oyle Olife, tempering them together, and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith soke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

* Againſt ſwellyng of the body.

When the chyldes body or any part therof is ſwollen & puffed vp, then take the toppes of Elder tree, and of Walwort, and ſeeth them in whyte wyne, and therein lap the Infant, ſpecially yf it be not taken with ouer great heate, but yf ſo be that with ſwellyng in the head the belly be ſwollen alſo, thē take Myrre, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogether, and temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

* Agaynſt often ſneeſing.

Omtimes the Infantes be ſore troubled and vexed with often ſternutation and ſneeſyng, whiche thing yf it come of the apoſtume in the head, then ſhal ye miniſter ſuch thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the hearbes, or other thinges. If this come of any other cauſe then of apoſtume, then take Baſyll be it greene or dry, and put of the iuyce or powder of it into the chyldes noſe. But yf this ſneeſyng come and begin with heate, and that the chyldes eyes ſeeme as they grewe inwarde for payne therof, then lay to the chyldes

head

head the leaues of Purslayne, or Gowarde cut in thinne slyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses and Barlye meale, and also the youlke of an egge.

* Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

THese whelkes if they appeare blacke vpon the body, they signifie peryll of life, and so muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or reddishe, it is no perill, and may easly be cured. Wherfore take the leaues of the red Rose, the leaues of Mirtils, and of *Tamariscus*, and seeth these in water, and in that water, wet a lynnen cloth, and soke therwith the whelkes.

Item, lykewyse it is good to annoynt the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and *Tamariscus*. If the whelkes be whyte or reddishe, then let them be rype before ye minister any thing to them, and when they be open and begyn to matery, then to clense, purifie, and to dry them beyng rype and broken. It is verye good to wash the same whelkes with Mulsum or Hydromell, in which Saltpeter is dissolued. Mulsum and Hydromell is, water and Honye sodden together.

* Against swelling of the coddes.

MAny tymes chaunseth to chyldren (throwe ouermuch crying) swellyng about the coddes, and sometymes burstenesse,

and ſwellyng in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche ſwellyng ſometymes commeth by inflammation or great heate, and ſometyme with onlye wyndyneſſe. If it come of wyndyneſſe, then the coddes will ſometymes appeare ſo ſtyffe as a tabour, and ſhyne as it were an horne. The remedy for this, is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therin ſeeth of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue, a quarter of an handfull, of Fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull, cut and broose all theſe herbes together, and ſeeth them from the quart to the pinte, thē ſtrayne them ſtrongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer, ſeeth ſo much beaneflowre as may ſerue to make a plaſter, thereto addyng at the latter ende, two or three ſponefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaſter hotte to the coddes. If the ſwellyng come of heate, then alay the ſame with ſome colde hearbes, ſuch as I haue oftentimes ſpoken of before.

¶ Againſt ſwellyng of the Nauell.

Alſo ſometymes the chyldes Nauell ſwelleth, and ſpecially ſtraight after the byrth when it is cut. For this, take Spike celtyke, and ſeeth it in the oyle of Almondes, myxed with a little Turpintine, then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf ſo be that this ſwellyng come of ouermuche crying, cough, or of a ſtroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of fayre

fayre olde lynnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wyne, & then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Nauyll.

* Agaynst vnsleepynesse.

AGainst vnsleepinesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle crying and weeping. For this take two heades (with the seedes therin conteyned) of whyte Poppye, and with one sponefull of Rose water, & three or foure droppes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortall reasonably, then adde thereto two sponefulles of womans mylke, and the wayght of an halfpeny of Saffron, with halfe a sponefull of Barlye flowre, the which yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thynne double lynnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnsleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of Vineger, and of this liquour droppe oftentymes into the chyldes nosethrylles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, and farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.

¶ Agaynst yeryng or the hyckate.

THis yering commeth either of coldeneſſe of the ſtomache, other els of ouermuche fulneſſe, or for lacke of meate and emptynes of the ſtomake or els by ſome hotte and colericke qualitie bytyng vppon the mouth of the ſtomacke.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce of meate, and fulneſſe, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldeneſſe of the ſtomacke, then annoynt the ſtomacke with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the ſtomacke a plaſter made of the ſeede of Dyll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate or collericke qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, or of Roſes, the iuyce of Endiue, or of any other ſuch hearbes the which haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the ſame with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes ſtomacke.

And when it proceadeth by defecte and lacke of meate, or emptineſſe of the ſtomacke, then geue to the chylde to feede vppon mylke, & other good holſome thynges to ſuppe, neyther paſſe not greatly though the chylde reiecte and vomit vp agayne that the whiche it receyueth, for ſo much euer wyll remayne in the ſtomacke that ſhalbe ſufficient to ſuſtayne it, and meanely to nozyſhe it.

¶ Agaynst often parbreakyng by weakneſſe and feebleneſſe of the ſtomacke.

AGainſt ouermuch parbreaking, beate foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with foure or fyue ſponefulles of red wine.

Item, take of Maſticke, whyte Frankenſence, and the leaues of the red Roſe, ſo much as ſhalbe ſufficient, & all theſe beaten together, temper them with the iuyce of Wyntes, and make a plaſter of it, laying it to the chyldes ſtomacke. But yf the chyldes vomiting be very vehement, then put vnto theſe foreſayde thynges a quantitie of Roſe vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it ſo hot in an ouen, or els in a frying panne ouer the fyre tyll it waxe broune, then beate it to powder agayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to theſe ad the yolke of an egge harde roſted, Maſticke, Frankencenſe, and Gumme Arabicke, and temper all theſe with the iuyce of Wyntes, makyng of it a plaſter, the whiche laye to the chyldes ſtomacke, and to the chyldes mouth and noſe holde a warme toſte of breade.

Cauſes of this yll be three. The firſt, yf the chylde haue taken more mylke then it is able to concocte and digeſt. The ſecoude, yf the Nurſes mylke be ouer thynne, waterithe, and fluithe. The thyrde, yf the ſame mylke be impure, feculent, and corrupte. Theſe cauſes prouoke vomite, and ſpecially yf the chylde alſo haue a

weake and waterysshe stomacke: wherefore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.
Fyrst let the chyld sucke lesse then it dyd before, and then also marke that which the chylde doeth perbrake, whether it sauer sharply lyke vinegre, or that it be whytysshe. For yf it be so: then take of white Frankensence. viii. graines, of dryed Rue. xx. graines: beate these to powder, and geue it to the chyld to drynke, with the sirope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chawe Cimmin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Masticke, *Accatia*, *Xiloaloes*, Galles, whyte Frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttynge to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

But yf it so be that the perbrakynge of the chylde sauer not after the fashion of Vinegre, but after some other sowre sauer, and that it be not whytysh, but pale or yelowysshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomacke. Take Barlye meale, wylde Mulberies, and *Pfidium*, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomake be somewhat waterysshe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynte it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath ben dissolued, or els the

water

water of Wirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iuyce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Suger, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and mixed.

* Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

ALso sometyme the chyldren be vexed and vnquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in theyr sleepe, whiche thyng for the most part commeth of the aboundance of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, whiche for the copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuicte ne ouercome of nature, wherfore necessaryly it putrifieth and corrupteth, the noysome and hydyous vapours wherof, flying vp to the head in time of slepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the slepe. And thus may it be remedyed. Fyrst take heede that ye lay not the chylde to slepe strayght after it hath fedde, and also let it lycke a little hony, swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somwhat harde to digest and concocte, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse the more easyly to descende into the guttes.

Item euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuary called *Diamuscum* or *Diaplicis*. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as saith Rasis.

* Agaynst issuyng forth of the fundement gutte.

FOr the issuyng forth of this gut, when the chylde laboureth to ease it selfe: Take Wirtilles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dried, burnt

burnt Hartes hornes, burnt Alome, Goates hoofe, *Balaustium*, and Galles, of eche lyke muche, and seeth all these together with water, so long tyll the water haue receaued the strength of the ingredience, & with this water, beyng warme, washe the gut, and so conuey it into the body agayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.

Enasmus is a disease when the child enforceth it self to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, the whiche thyng oftentymes chaunceth to chyldren, most commonlye proceadyng of colde. Agaynste the which, ye shall vse these remedies. Take garden Cresses and Cummin seede, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with old butter, and geue it to drynke to the chylde with colde water.

Item, take Turpintine, and laye of it vppon coales, whose fume let the chylde receaue beneathe in the fundement, the fume beyng inclosed rounde about with clothes.

Item take Tarre, and lykewyse make fume of it, receyuyng the fume as before.

¶ Agaynst wormes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede wormes in the guttes, of the byggenesse and quantitie of such as are wont to be in olde Cheese, called Mites, and some lyke lyce. And sometime in the belly be engendred wormes, of the byggenesse

nesse of earth wormes, called Eases. Agaynst these vse this remedie. Take the water of *Centumnodia*, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with mylke.

Item take of whyte Corall, the scrapyng of Juery, of Hartes horne burnte, and of Ireos, of eche a scruple, of Suger candy one ounce and an halfe, of the water of *Centumnodia*, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, & of this make suppositaries, ministryng to the chylde euery daye the wayght of two drammes.

Otherwyse accordyng to Rasis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Ore gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the which ye shall laye to the Infantes Nauyll.

Item oyle Olyfe taken and dronken a small quantitie therof, is very good to kyll all maner of wormes which breede in the gutte, neare to the fundement: Take the finest cotton, & therof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kyrnelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item it shall greatly profyte the chylde, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntment for the same. Take of Wormwood & of Lupines, of ech two drams, of

Siler

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and *Centonicum*, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons the waight of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of waxe, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fyre, or in some warme place.

Item take of Cockle two drammes, of wormwood and Wasticke of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of *Coriander prepa-rat*, vi. drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder vi. drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chylde the wayght of foure pence of the powder of *Aloes cicotrine*, with fayre water fyrst sodden and sweeted with Suger, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Ore gall, of both two ounces, of *Colocinthis* viii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a little Wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chylde.

Item

* Item a bathe for the same.

Take Wormewood and Gaules, and seeth them in water, and let the chylde be bathed in it vp to the Nauell.

¶ Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

AGaynst gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skin, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpenes of vrine or sweat: Take Myrtils and beate them to powder, and strewe therof on the place. Item, take of *Irios*, of the red Rose, of Cipr̃us, of *Tragacantum*, so muche as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed place.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte Frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take. viii. graynes of Camphere dissolued in Rose water and myrte therwithall, and of al this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall. Also *Vnguentum album*, and *Vnguentum rubeum* be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherin Plantaine, knot grasse, dock rootes, or *Bursa pastoris* is sodden, is very good for the same.

* Of the fallyng sickes.

SOmetymes these Infantes be vexed and encombred with the fallyng sickes, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that it

it hath this diſeaſe ſtrayght forth with the byrth: Cauſe of the whiche, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by ſome accidentall cauſes, in whiche caſe, yf it leaue not the childe, being a man chylde, before he be.xxb. yere of age, and the woman chylde, about the tyme of hauyng her fyrſt flowres, yf it forſake them not in this ſpace, neither by the myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this diſeaſe come not by nature, but by ſome accidentall cauſe afterwarde, then geue diligent heede that the Nurſes mylke be very good, and conuenient to the chyldes nature. And for the ſame purpoſe, if neceſſitie require it, ſhalbe very good to purge and cleanſe the Nurſes body with due & meete medicines, and ſhe muſt auoyde al ſuch thinges the which do coole and moyſten, and to ſuffer the chylde to receyue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digeſt.

for ſeeling ſickneſs

Againſt this cruell diſeaſe, aucthours much commende the roote of a Pionie, onlye hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the ſame roote dryed and beaten to powder, and ſo oftentymes geuen to the chylde to take, ſometymes with drynke, ſometymes with potage, pap, or milke, or any other wayes.

for drynke.

Likewiſe the ſeede of Pionie is very good.

and make a plaſter

Farthermore powre nowe and then into the chyldes noſethryls of oyle of Caſtoreum, or the oyle

of

with honye and muſtard. and bind to the head

of *Costus*, or of *Enforbium*: Also let the chylde smell to Rue and to *Asa fetida*.

Item, to hange *Viscum querſimam*, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreasyng, about the chyldes necke, is very good. Dyuers other thynges there be which myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this time.

¶ Consumption or pynyng away of the body.

When the Infant falleth away, and the flesshe rebateth, remaynyng nothing but as it were skin and bone, and therby the chylde waxeth sickelye: Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in which hath ben sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long till the flesshe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chylde commeth forth of the bath, fyrst let it be wyped & dryed cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntment. Take freshe Butter, oyle of Violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porke, halfe an ounce, of whyte waxe two drammes, melt all these thinges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoynting therwith the chyldes body.

Item, take white waxe, Swines grese, shepes tallowe, freshe Butter, melt all these thynges together and strayne them, makyng of it an oyntment, and annoynt the childe withal once or twyse euery daye. But the chiefe hope

of

of restauration, muste be in lyght, restorative and pure nourishing meates.

* Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauynesse of the chyldes body.

SOmetimes it chaunseth that the chyldes members of the bodye be so feeble, as though it had the paulsey, so that with that partes of the body the childe can not helpe it selfe, neither can it lift vp the handes, armes, ne stande on the feete. If the chylde haue this disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse be comforted and strengthened with such thinges, the which haue vertue to heate and to dry. Also let the Nurse feede only on rosted or fryed meates, and that she forbeare from milke, fishe, and harde or salt powdred flesshe, for commonly this disease springeth of colde and moyste humours, besieging the sinewes.

Farthermore, let not the Nurse vse any watered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne kynde, and let her bathe the chylde euer before she geue it sucke, after, annoyntyng it with the oyle of *Castorium*, or the oyle of *Costum*, and let the chylde drinke euery day a quantitie of this electuary folowyng.

Take garden Mynt, Cinamome, Cummin, drye Roses, Mastick, Fenugreke *Valeriane*, *Amios*, *Doronicum*, *Zedoarium*, Cloues, Saunders, *Xiloaloes*, of eche a dram, of Muske halfe a dram, beate all those to powder, and confict them with clarified and depured honye, makyng thereof an electuary,

electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wyne. Yf the chylde haue this diſeaſe in euery part of his body, then take an ounce of waxe and a dramme of *Euforbium*, the which *Euforbium* ye ſhall beate in a morter with v. or. vi. droppes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, addyng thervnto ſo much oyle as maye be ſufficient to make a ſearecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

* Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palſy.

IF the chylde happen to be vexed with tremblyng or ſhakyng of the body or the partes therof, ſo that ye feare the palſy of the ſame part, or that the falſyng ſickneſs ſhoulde enſue, then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roſes, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them together, warmyng it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other ſhakyng members, ye may alſo take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and ſuch other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Roſemary, Sage, Tyme, Iſope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallage. &c. is very ſoueraigne. If you cannot cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counſayle of the Phiſitions.

The thyrde Booke.

¶ Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng of the vrine.

STrangury, Dissury, and the difficultie in makyng of water, oftentymes chaunceth to chyldren by reason of the stone, or aboundaunce of grauell, other els many times of some other viscous, slymye, and fleumatyke matter, in maner & fourme of dregges or ragges ouerthwartyng and crossing the passage, wherby the vrine should passe forth, in such wise, that (without great payne) the chylde can not make his water, and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Which of these wayes so euer it come, it shalbe very good to bathe the chylde vp to the Nauyll in the decoction of paritorie of the wall, Wallowes, Holyoke, Lyneseede, Lylly rotes, Fenegreke, & Sauery, other els with a spunge or double lynnen cloth dypped therin, eftsones to foment the share and nether part of the belly agaynst the bladder.

But in men chyldren chiefely foment them on the straightes, betwene the fundement and the coddes, the whiche place in Latin is called *Perineum*, for there in them lyeth the necke of the bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation, drye the places fomented, and whylest they be yet redde with bathing, annoynt them with the oyle of scorpions, to be had at the Apothecaries, or els the oyle called *Petroleum*.

And yf farther nede shall require it, ye maye applie

applie this plaster folowyng to the forsayde places. Take of Parseley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Paritorie, Wallowes, Holyoke rotes, of eche an handfull, seeth these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll suche tyme as they be softe, then powre out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone morter, addyng therunto of the seedes of Fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lykewyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, *Petroleum*, or other appertyffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commixed together, make a plaster, and laye to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administred inwardes, it is but folye, for so much as it is so harde to cause a chyld to take any thyng within forth.

This difficultie in makyng water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

¶ Of goggle eyes or lokyng a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it loke a squynt, then firste set the cradell in suche a place that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neyther in the one side, neither in the other, neither aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on which side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyghte come vnto it on the

contrary syde, so to returne the syght. And in the nyght season set a candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the colour of lyght greene, or yelowe, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to beholde these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye syght towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseases of chyldren after they be borne, makyng here an ende of this thirde booke for this tyme.

¶ Of such thynges the whiche shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke.

Capit. i.

HEre in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shall briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hynder the conception of man, Whiche as it may be by dyuers meanes letted and hindered, so also by many other Wayes, it may be farthered and amended. Also to know by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceyued or no, and whether the conception be male or female, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we will (accordyng to our promyse in the Prologue) set forth certayne bellifying receptes, and so make an ende of this whole treatise.

The fourth booke.

✳ Of conception, and howe many wayes it may be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

THere is nothing vnder heauen whiche so manyfest and playnely doth declare and shewe the magnificent mightines of the omnipotent liuing God, as doth the perpetuall and continuall generation and conception of lyuyng thinges here in earth, by the whiche is saued, proroged, and augmented the kynde of all thinges. And where that this almightie Lord and creature hath so institute and ordayned, that no singuler thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) shoulde continuallye remayne and abyde, yet hath he geuen from the beginning and instincted suche a power and vertue vnto these mortall creatures, that they may engender and produce other lyke thynges vnto themselfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie. Were not this prouision had by almightie god, the nature and kynde of all maner of thynges woulde soone perishe and come to an ende, the whiche vertue and power of generation many times doth halt and misse, by defect and the contrary disposition in the partes generant.

As ye may euidently see in the sowyng of corne and all other maner of seede, so that there be in all maner of generation three principall partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede sowen, and the receptacle or place receyuyng

tyng and contaynyng the seede. Yf there be faulte in any of these three, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng, clipping and embrasing them in her wombe, feedyng and fostering them as the Mother doth the chylde in her belye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto theyr nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceyued in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterysshe, dankishe, or ouer hoate and dry, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbish, or ful of yll wedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng, also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyse viciate and corrupted, and so the life and spirite of it vanished away and destroyed. The sower may vnordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be let in none of these three partes concurrent to generation, or that the lettes be remoued and done awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplication and encreasement of that kynde, of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almightie God hath enplanted and set in the kynde of all thinges.

The fourth booke.

¶ Howe many wayes conception may be letted, and howe the causes may be knowen. Capit. xi.

Euery thyng then the whyche doth encrease in this kinde, must first be conceyued in the wombe and Matrix of the Mother, whyche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayde before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receyuyng the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in woman there may be foure generall causes, by the whyche the conception may be impedite and let, ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuche humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceadyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherfore the ryght excellent Phisition *Hipocrates* in the. v. booke of his Amphorismes saith: All suche women the whyche haue colde and dense Matrices, cannot conceyue, and suche as haue moyste and watersyche Matrices can conceyue, for the powre of the seede is extinguished in it. Also hauing dry Matrices, conceyue not, for the seede perysheth for lacke of due nutriment and foode, but that Matrix the whyche hath all these qualities in temperauncie, that is fruitefull. This is *Hipocrates* saying, the which

thyng

thyng also may be well perceyued by a familier example of the sowyng of corne.

For yf it be sowen in ouer colde places, such as be in the partes of a countrey, called Scithia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowen, wyll neuer come to prose, nor fructifie, but through the behement coldnesse of the place, in the which it is conceyued, the lyfe and quickenes of the grayne is vtterly destroyed and annihilate.

And farther as concernyng ouer muche humiditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or marysshe and waterie grounde, the seede wyll perisshe through the ouer muche aboundaunce of water, whiche extinguisheth the liuelynes and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Likewise yf it be sowen in suche a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so dry, that there came no rayne at all to alay the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne, then shall the seede sowen wyther and drye awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowen in drye places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the sande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceyued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore yf the Matrix be distempered, by

the

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperauncie, by suche remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man, as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the whiche she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not nede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceyue, the cause commyng of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sydes, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shall appeare whyte and thynnyshe, and sometimes also somwhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thinges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But if it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shal she know by these signes. If the body of her be of a fat and grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the beginning and the latter ende of them certayne viscous and watery substaunce, and that her bryne be whyte, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feele great colde and payne about the Matrix and priuie partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raines of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryeth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception,

tion, then is the vryne hye coloured, red or yelowe, beyng thinne, with certayne motes appearyng in the water, the woman hath great thyrst, and bytter rysyng or belchynges out of the stomacke into the mouth. And many times they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all theyr body, hauyng also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may happen eyther by ouer much watche, or ouermuch fastyng, labour, trauayle, sorowe, sicheneſſe, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardly be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apte to conceyue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his exceſſe causeth sterilitie. Nowe wyll we shewe howe it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and howe to knowe whether the woman be conceiued or no, according to the minde of right experte Phisitions.

How to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceyued whether she be conceyued or no. Cap.liii.

IF ye be desirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderaūce in conception: Let eche of them take of wheate

Wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche. bii. the which they shall sucker to be steped in theyr seuerall vryne the space of. xxiiii. houres then take two pottes, suche as they set Gyliflowres in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be set the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, styped in the mans water, and in the other the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes styped in the womans water, and euery mornyng the space of. biii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with theyr proper vrine, water the said seedes sowen in the foresayde pottes, and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein contayned doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception, and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes, but trust not much this farre fet experiment.

Item, accordyng to *Hipocrates* wrytyng, yf ye wyll knowe whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receyue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed rounde about, the fume of some odorifferous perfume, as *Laudanum*, *Storax calamite*, *Lignum Aloes*, Muske, Ambre, and such other, and yf the odour and sauour of such thynges ascende thorowe her body vp vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande, that sterilitie commeth not of the womans part, yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlicke beyng pilled out of the huskes, and conuay of it into the priuie partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vppe thorowe the bodye vnto the nose, the woman is

faultlesse,

fautlesse: yf not, then is ther lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but only lykely.

To knowe wheter the woman be conceaued, or no.

Whether she be conceaued alredy or no, ye shal knowe by these signes. Fyrst, the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begyn to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be, the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyse then she was used to do before that tyme. Also her urine wareth spysse and thyckyshe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matrix very fastlye and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle maye scace enter.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the. v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of *Mellicratum* to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnawyng, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This *Mellicratum* is a drynke, made of one part wyne, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle

of

of one of her fyngers, and yf the Wylke flewe and fpzede abzode vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chylde, but yf the dzop of Wylke continue and ſtande ſtyll vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a ſigne of a man chyld.

Item if it be a male, then ſhall the woman with childe be wel colored, and lyght in going, her belly round, bigger towarde the rightſide, then the left (for commonly the man chylde lieth in the ryghte ſide, the woman in the lefte ſide) and in the time of her bearing ſhe ſhal better digeſt and lyke her meate, her ſtomacke nothyng ſo queſy ne feeble.

¶ Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.

Aſterilite then for the moſt part enſueth & cõmeth of the diſtemperauncie of one of theſe foure forenamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the ſame when it chaunceth, muſt be done by ſuch thinges the which haue contrary power and operation to the exceſſiue qualitie, for by that ſhall it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldneſſe and moiſtneſſe exceading temperauncie in the Matrix be occaſion of ſterilitie, then muſt ſhe applye ſuche thynges to that place the which be of nature hot and drie, the whiche maye califie and warme the place, and alſo dzye vp the yll moyſtnes and humours con-

conteyned in the same, hyndering conception.

And forbecause that the moste generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceade of cold, waterysshe, and flegmaticke humours, whiche bedewyng the innersydes and holonesse of the Matrix, with the port and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remayne ne cleaue, neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to close it selfe sufficiently after the reception of the seede, the flewmie and slimie humours withstandyng it, the which vnlesse they be discussed, or dryed awaye, the seede alwaye slyppeth and slydeth forth as fast as it entreth in.

Wherfore to remedie and to do away the foresayde impediment, ye shall vse the meanes whiche foloweth.

Fyrste, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Phisition take a purgation, which may purge flewme and waterysshenes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her syt in a bath vp almost to the Nauyll, in the whiche bath ye shall decocte and seeth these hearbes folowyng. Take of Bay leaues, Mallowes, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Maioram, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulles, of Mercurie and Brankursin of eche two handfulles, seeth all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water and the other halfe redde wyne,

wyne, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a little before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuary folowyng.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Galyngale, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the waygbt of a grote, of Annis seede the waygbt of two grotes, of Sage leaues dryed the waygbt of three grotes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small pouder, temper them altogether in so much pure clarifyed hony, as maye be sufficient to receyue all the powder, other els comm ixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the waygbt of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the waygbt of two grotes, with .viii. ix. or .x. sponefulles of good whyte or claret wyne, other els with good Malueley or Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornyng one houre before breakefast or dyner, other els . v. or. vii. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vpon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornyng, then at nyght three or foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowyng into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dryed, of vnset Tyme, Bay berryes, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a little handfull, of whyte Frankencense the waygbt of foure grotes, of Sage dryed, or other two little handfulles of Rosemary

leaues

leaues one handfull, seeth these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour therof, sitting grouelyng, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or conduite, thorowe the whiche the vapour may be directed in the womans priuie passage, the nere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyp wooll, or els fine linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, ther to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuary, and vapour, I counsell them that haue nede to vse them the space of three dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companye with her husbande, and by the grace of God she shalbe sped. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath only, or the electuary alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceadyng of colde, moyste, and fleigmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryeth, then let her be purged of coller, or other vnkynd heat bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterward to vse bathes electuaries, and vapours, of moderatly cooling thinges, as of Roses, Violets, Lettuse, Purs-

layne, Plantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that most commonly the vnaptitude of conception (in women hauing their healthy) springeth of the superfluitie of colde & moyst humours (wherof we haue already spoken) therefore all other impedimentes lefte a part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all the occasions, whereby conception may be let or impedite, then shoulde I here alledge and bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a woman in that partes, with the remedies therof, whiche were a long worke and not proper for this volume.

* In this. vi. Chapter is entreated of diuers bellifying receptes, as ye may hereafter reade.

THe embellishing or bellifying medicines wherof I entende to speake here, be not to be vnderstanden to be of that sort whereby any Adstitious or outwarde forayne beautie or set colours should be acquired or gotten, the which far fet & dampnable curiositie, I doubt not but that all honest and vertuous sadde women do vtterly abhorre and contempne: but here mine only meaning is, to shew how to remoue certayne blemishes, & as it were weedes of the body, through the whiche many tymes, the naturall beautie therof is obscured and defaced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so beauti-

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes enterminglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therin will remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whyche euer when time or season serueth, nature thrusteth forth.

Lykewyse in the body of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of ill and not necessary humours, with the which nature being offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryueth them forth, sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, according to the aptitude or feblenesse in resistence of the place receyuyng it, and the force or violencie of nature (therwith greeued) sending it, so that the superfluities founde in the vpper part and face or superficie of the skin, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter contayned and commixed in the vaynes among the bloud, and is a great euidence and testimonie therof. But here I wyll not speake of all kindes of vtter diseases springing of this inwardes corrupted humours, but onlye of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and woman without any imperishement of they^r health.

As for example, first I wyll briefly declare the fylthynesse of the head, called in laten *Perrigo*,

in Englyche, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembing and cratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were bran, falleth of from the head, and lyeth verye thicke among and vnder the hayre.

✻ Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

THe cause of this Drandruffe commeth by aboundance of fleumatike humours, cõmixt with the bloud, the which dayly and hourely by vnsensible sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the poores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skyn, and there remaynyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the forest of hayre which couereth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no hayre groweth. And most commonly they that haue blacke hayre, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffred ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the hayres, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembing. And although this superfluitie be not clendly, yet notwithstandyng it shall be no wysedome for me to teache, ne any other herewith encombred, to learne how to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniences, but onlye I counsell you once in then dayes at the least, to

washe

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye wherin let be steped in a lynnē bagge of Annis seede, Cummin, dryed Rosemary, Fenugreke, and the rindes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washynge of your heade ye take no colde, before the heade be perfectly dryed.

And wheras some say, that they which vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue ben washed, roll vp theyr hayre (beyng yet wet) about theyr heades, the colde wherof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and pooses, with other inconueniences. Wherfore all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dryed with warm clothes, whyles the head is yet hotte of the washynge, and then neuer feare no inconueniences, but rather conuenience and commoditie: & let this be done also fastyng in the morning, or els one houre before supper, or .v. houres after supper: this oft washyng shall puryfye the skyn of the headde, and stedfast the hayre from fallyng, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the sences therin conteyned, and greatly comfort the braynes.

To take away hayre from places where it is vnsemely.

ITem, sometymes hayre groweth in places vnsemely, and out of order: as in manye maydens and women the hayre groweth

so lowe in the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vse three wayes to remoue them, eyther to pluck vp one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther elles with this lye folowyng. Take newe burnte Lyme foure ounces, of Arsenicke one ounce, stipe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfecte, dyp a feather therin, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easely, then is it strong ynough, with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayre, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the hayres, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein bran bath ben steped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olyfe, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Purslayne, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue hayre, is with a plaster made of very dry pytche, and vpon leather applyed to the place, the hayres beynge fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cysars.

Nowe when the hayres be vp by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a grote, and dissolue it in two sponefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therwithall annoynte the

place

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of ix. or. x. dayes, and hayre wyll growe no more in that place.

¶ To do away Frekens or other spottes in the face.

THese Frekens and suche other spottes in the face or other where in the body, may be taken away by often annoyntyng thē with the oyle of Tarter, to be founde alwayes at the Apothecaries, and suerly that oyle is soueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce in halfe a pynt of strong whyte Vinegre, tyll halfe be consumed, then myxte therwith Hony three sponefulles, and the wayght of a penye of Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apothecaries) and seeth these together agayne tyll it become thicke: with this annoynt the Frekens, and it wyl destroy them. This is also very good for the Morphewe, and other discoloration or staynyng of the skyn.

To destroy Wartes and such lyke excrescences on the face or els where.

FOR this purpose nothyng is so excellent as euery day once, the space of thre or four dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong water, called *Aqua fortis*, on them, for this destroyeth them in very short tyme.

Item the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lyttle Mercury sublimid in fayre

fayze water, & therwith drop the wartes, and they wyll sone wyther and consume away.

¶ To cleare and claryfye the skin in the handes, face or other part of the body.

FOR this is nothyng better then to take one sponefull of the oyle of Tarter, and sixe sponefulles of water, with these commixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, clenseth and puryfyeth the skyn soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynes to remayne in the poores of the flesh, and this oyle of Tarter is made on this wyse. Take wyne lyes dryed, the whiche the Golde smythes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyll therof a Goldsmythes crudyble, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyll begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of the fyre and lette it coole, and bynde it in a lynnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boylynge water: that done, hang this cloute with the Arguyll in a glasse with a broade mouth. so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Tarter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the soner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyst sellar.

Item to scoure the handes & the bodye, some vse to washe theyr handes with the powder of Dyes, which is the roote of the blewe Flowre-deluce, and some with Beane flowre.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

¶ To

✳ To souple and mollifie the ruggednes of the skinne.

ANnoynt the skyn with the Oyle of sweete Almons, the same is verye good also for chippinges of the lippes or handes.
Item, Deere suet is very proper for the same purpose, especially being well washed and tempered with Rose water, wherein hath ben dissolued two or three graynes of pure Muske.

¶ Against sodayne rysynges of pimples, through vnkinde heate, in the face or els where.

TAke the white of an egge, and beate it wel with a spone, and then therwith commixe two sponefull of Salet oyle, one sponefull of Rose water, another of the iuyce of Sorrell, & halfe a little sponefull of Vineger, herewith annoynt the pimples and rysynges.

✳ To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane.

FIrst yf they be very yelowe and fylthy, or blackysche, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pike them cleane and whyte, then after to maintayne them cleane, it shalbe very good to rubbe them euery day with the roote of a Mallowe, & to pike them cleane that no meate remayne and putrifie betwene the teeth.
Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones whiche be founde by the water sides, and beate thē in very smal powder, hereof take an ounce, and of Mastickie one dram, mingle them toge-

ther

ther, and with this powder once in.xiiii.dayes rub exactly your teeth,and this shall kepe your teeth fayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not ne vexe the gummes therwithall.

Item,to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe verye good euery day in the morryng, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

¶ Of stynkyng breath.

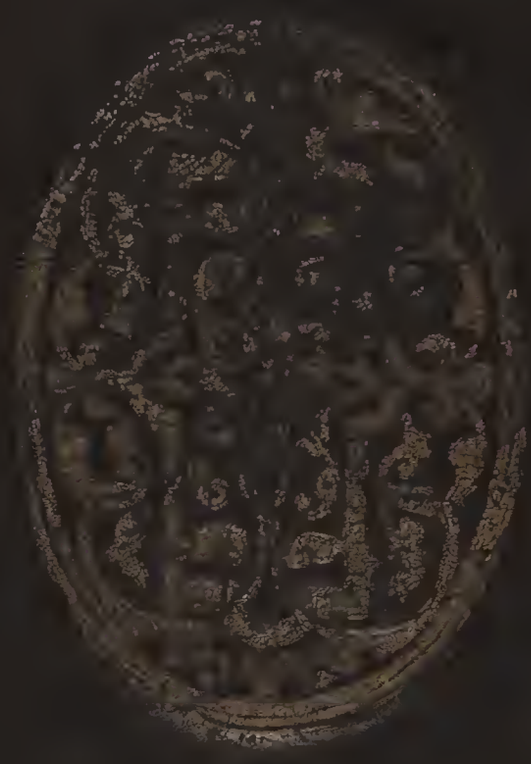
STinch of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bread in the mouth,or els in the stomacke. If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the farther aduyse of a Phisition. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then most commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted hollowe teeth. which in this case must be plucked out,and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vinegre wherin hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly kepyng of the teeth doth conferre much to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

¶ Of the ranke sauour of the armehole.

THis vice in many persons is very tedious and lothsome, the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrst the colericke and egre humours,originall causers of the same,and afterwarde to washe the armeholes oftentymes with the water wherein wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lyttle quantitie of Alome.

Item,

Item, Auctheurs do wryte, that the rootes of Artichautes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in whyte wyne & so dronke, doth clense the stench of the armeholes and other partes of the body by the brine. For (as Galen also doth testifie) he prouoketh copy and plentie of stynkyng and vnsauery brine from all partes of the body, the whiche propertie it hath by speciall gyfte, and not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus here I make an ende of this fourth and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.